

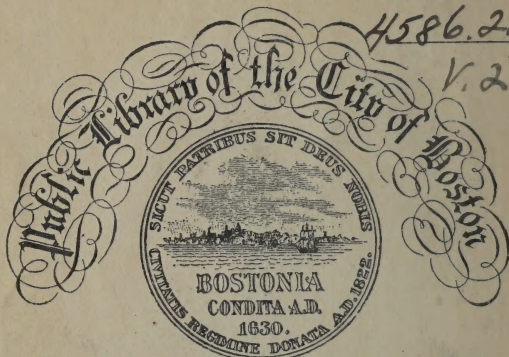


PROPERTY OF THE

Shell No.

4586.20

V. 2

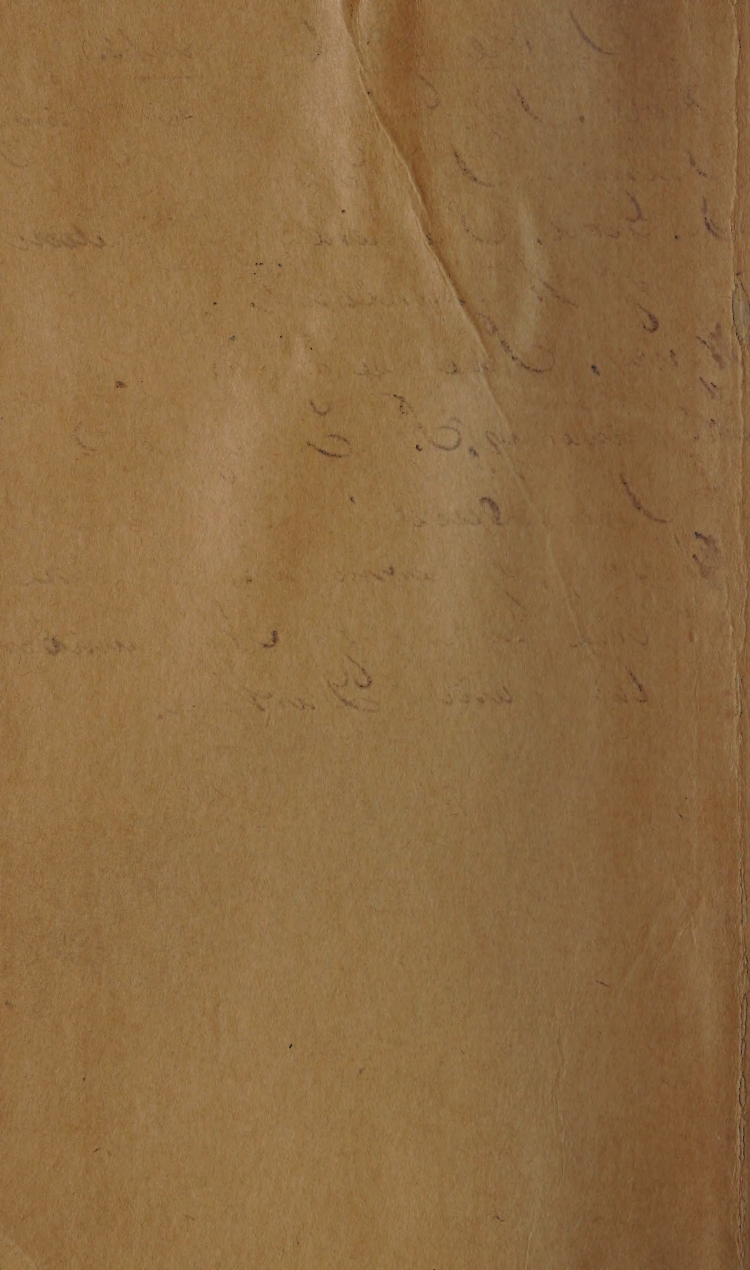


*From the Bates Fund.*

**CAUTION**

not write in this book or mark it with  
pencil. Penalties are imposed by the  
Laws of the Commonwealth of Mas-  
sachusetts, Chapter 208, Section 83.







## Table of Contents.

1. Scott. Pedigree of the Scott family.
2. Pulman. Rustic sketches.
3. St. George. The heraldic visitation of Westmoreland.
4. Wyrley. True use of arms.
5. Mainwaring, P. Reply to Sir Peter Leicester's answer etc.
6. Glossary of terms used in the coal trade of Northumberland and Durham.



TRACTS  
ON THE  
DIALECTS, GENEALOGY,  
TOPOGRAPHY, ETC.  
OF  
ENGLAND AND WALES.





TRACTS

ON THE

Dialects, Genealogy,  
Topography, &c.

OF

ENGLAND AND WALES.

\*4586.20  
v.21

---

VOL. II.

---

LONDON:

JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN.

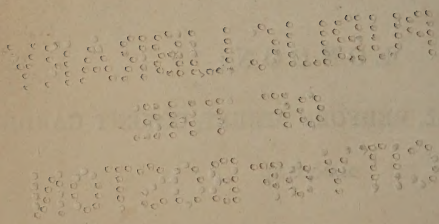
M.DCCC.II.

TRADE



Bts.  
45873  
May 9, 1861.

7011





PEDIGREE  
OF THE  
FAMILY OF SCOTT, OF STOKOE.

REPRINTED FROM THE ORIGINAL EDITION 1783,

WITH INTRODUCTION, CONTINUATION, &c.



LONDON:

JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD ST. COVENT GARDEN,

MDCCCLII.

IMPRINTED  
AT THE BEDFORD PRESS, IN COVENT GARDEN.

---

ONLY 75 COPIES PRINTED.

TO  
SIR CHARLES GEORGE YOUNG, KNIGHT;  
*Garter, King at Arms; F.S.A., &c. &c.*  
THIS REPRINT  
OF ONE OF THE RAREST GENEALOGICAL TRACTS  
CONNECTED WITH THE NORTH OF ENGLAND  
IS  
RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED.





## INTRODUCTION,

BY WILLIAM ROBSON SCOTT, PH. DOC.

Author of "A Treatise on the Deaf and Dumb," "The Education of Idiots," &c. &c.

---

"BONA EXISTIMATIO PRÆSTAT."

---

*Cic de Or.*

THE family of SCOTT has for many generations been one of great wealth and influence upon the Scottish Border. From the days when "Nine-and-Twenty Knights of Fame" with Squires of every degree hung their shields in Branksome's Hall," to our own times, when their chieftian ranks amongst the most illustrious of British Nobility, they have been distinguished. During the last six hundred years many branches have been given off by the parent stem, which have earned for themselves honours both in literature and in arms, and have not unfrequently been called upon to perform parts which have turned the tide even in the destinies of kings.

Amongst these, the families of Synton, Whitslade and Todrig, and now represented by that of Stokoe, and of which this Pedigree chronicles the history, have ever held an honourable position. When their head could council or their

arm could strike with advantage for their chief, they were ever his closest attendants and it has been truly said, that

“Better hearts o’er Border sod  
To seige or rescue never rode.”

In the celebrated *raid* made by Buccleugh in the reign of Elizabeth, and according to Maitland “on the 3d of April, 1596,\* when that chieftian with a chosen band of only “Thirty-three,” rescued “Kinment Willie” † from the custody of Lord Scroupe, in the strong-hold of Carlisle Castle—we find him calling Whitslade and Sinton to his counsels.

“His friends’ advice that he desired to know  
Was Howpasly, Thirlstone, Bonitown and Tushilaw,  
And Gaudiland’s his uncle’s son  
With Whitslade, Hendshaw and Sinton.”

*Satchel’s Pastrol.*

While the same author tells us that amongst the chivalric band that went, were

“Walter of Todrig that well could ride  
And Robert Scott brother to Whitslade.”

This daring act—an act of almost individual prowess—against Elizabeth’s powerful warden of the western marches, in his massive fortress of Carlisle, has been the theme of more than one Border Ballad, and seems to have astonished the daring spirits even of that age, for we are told

---

\* Spottiswood says the deed was performed on the 13th of April 1596.

† According to the best authors, William Armstrong of Kinmount.



"All sore astonished stood Lord Scroupe  
 He stood as still as a rock of stane  
 He scarcely dared to trew his eyes  
 When through the water they had gane.  
 'He is either himsell a devil frae hell  
 'Or else his mother a witch mun be  
 'I wadna hae ridden that wan water  
 'For a the gowd in Christentie."

*Old Border Ballad.*

Again in the Lay of the Last Minstrel where he "the mightiest of them all" has awoke the dust of his fathers into life;—Sir Walter Scott, makes honourable mention of the Families of Whitslade and Todrig. When "Belted Will Howard" threatens war upon the House of Branksome and the distant followers are to be alarmed by the "loud slogan's yell,"—"Todrig" is sent "to warn the Johnstone clan." In the following lines Whitslade is appointed to a post of the highest honour and trust. "The Ladye sage"—the Queenly Margaret,

"—— bade her youthful son attend  
 That he might know his father's friend  
 And learn to face his foes.  
 Thou Whitslade shall teach him his weapon to wield  
 And o'er him hold his father's shield."

Thus Whitslade as the chosen friend of the departed chief, was selected by his widow to become her son's especial protector. Satchels informs us he was called the "Hawke complete," doubtless from his keenness, energy and courage.

Endowed with such qualities, he was well fitted to instruct his youthful chieftain in the art of war,—to face his foe with courage and wield his weapon with success—and these were no mean accomplishments when all followed

“ The good old rule

\* \* the simple plan

That they should take who have the power

And they should keep who can.”

*Wordsworth's Rob Roy's Grave.*

“ Satchell's Pastoral, which has been alluded to, and which is now probably rare, was one of the sources from which the Compiler of the reprint obtained many of his materials. The author was Captain Walter Scott, of Satchells, who, as he himself informs us, was

“ An old souldier and no scholler

And ane that can write nane

But just the letters of his name :—”

It consists of “ a true history of several Honourable Families of the Right Honourable name of Scott, in the shires of Roxburgh and Selkirk and others adjacent. Gathered out of Ancient Chronicles, Histories and Traditions of our Fathers.” It is chiefly in rhyme in the form of short poems, addressed to the various branches of the family. In the preface or rather “ epistle, dedicatory to John Lord Yester,” he says, “ my age is seventy-three ; it is fifty-seven years since I went to Holland with your Honourable Grandfather, Walter, Earl of Buccleugh, in the year 1629, and I was at that time

not full sixteen years of age," &c. So it appears that the book was written about 1686. As far as I can discover three editions have been published. A copy of the first edition is in the Library at Abbotsford; in Press A, Shelf VI; it is dated 1688, and was printed at Edinburgh "by the heir of Andrew Anderson, Printer to His Most Sacred Majesty, City and Colledge."—In 1776, there was a reprint published by Balfour & Smellie, Edinburgh, and the third edition, "with Elucidations from the best Historians and Writers on Heraldry," was printed at Hawick, by George Caw, 1786.\* In the opening of the work the author gives us an account of when, and under what circumstances, the name of Scott was first obtained, which he places in the reign of King Kenneth III. He further tells us that he gleaned this knowlege from a Book shown to him by a Mr. Launcelot Scott, at Burgh under Bowness, near Calaverock Castle, on the West Borders of Scotland, and that this Mr. Scott's family had dwelt there since the time that Carlisle Walls were rebuilt by King David of Scotland. This Book was called the Creed, or History of Michael Scott,† and he adds that this Mr. Michael Scott

---

\* I have in my own possession a copy of the Third Edition, perfect; also one of the First, which wants the title page, and is otherwise imperfect. For my imformation regarding the other, I am indebted to my friend Robert White, Esq., of Newcastle-on-Tyne, whose extensive knowledge on Border History, renders him a valuable authority on such subjects.

† Michael Scott's name is well known in Scotland, and his burial place is pointed out in different parts. He lived about the year 1214,

was buried there, and that though five hundred years had elapsed since he died, yet so terrified were the country people and others at his name,—believing him to be a great

---

and was a man eminent in Natural Philosophy and Mechanics. Tradition shows many of his wonderful works in throwing together mountains, laying vast causeways, &c., and also reports him as a person in contract with the devil. He is mentioned by Cervantes in *Don Quixotte*, as Escottello, the fabricator of a very curious Brazen head there mentioned. He is also mentioned by Dante in the “Inferno”

“That other round the loins

So slender of his shape was Michael Scot,  
Practiced in every slight of magic wile.”

*Cary's Translation, Canto XX.*

Boccaccio in the *Decameron*, Eighth Day, Novel IX, thus alludes to him:

“It was not long since there was in this city (Florence) a great master of necromancy, who was called Michael Scotto, because he was from Scotland.”

*English Translation.*

In a note to Warton's *History of English Poetry*, London, 1840, vol. 1, page cxxxv. where mention is made of the translators of Aristotle from Greek into Latin, he is thus noticed:

“Our countryman Michael Scotus was one of the first of these (translators) who was assisted by Andrew, a Jew. Michael was Astrologer to Frederick, Emperor of Germany, and appears to have executed his translations at Toledo in Spain, about the year 1220.”

Another character well known in Scottish Tradition, was associated with him as a servant or companion, one Thomas Learmont or Thomas the Rhymer, a person famous for his oracular Poetry, which was delivered in dark prophecies, many of which are still repeated by the common people of Scotland, who say most of them have been or will be fulfilled. Is such a book as the “Creed” of Michael Scott now to be found? Other books of his are extant. Much information both regarding Michael Scott and Thomas the Rhymer, is to be found scattered through the works of Sir Walter Scott.



Magician, that none would bury under or near his stone. The work also gives a detailed account of the *raid* made by Buccleuch for the rescue of "Kinment Willie," and much curious information on the various branches of the clan of Scott.

Dr. William Scott, the compiler of the reprint, studied as a Physician at the University of Edinburgh. On leaving, he brought with him extraordinary testimonials, of his ability and zeal, as a student, both from his examiners, and the professors under whom he studied. He settled at Stamfordham in Northumberland, where he practiced with great success for many years. He also held the then laborious office of County Coroner, and for many years of his life he probably rode little less than forty or fifty miles daily. Yet amidst all these professional duties, he still found a leisure hour to devote to literature. His great love of genealogical subjects combined with his untiring perseverance and energy, enabled him to collect from all available sources, every thing he could meet with on the name of Scott. As well as this Pedigree—which is the only work he published on the subject,—he left a large collection of manuscripts, which form, probably by far, the best essay towards a history of the name of Scott that has ever been attempted. Sir Walter Scott who saw some of these manuscripts, pronounced them to "contain much curious information." Independant however of his genealogical researches, he sent papers to the Royal Society, on subjects of more general interest, and published elsewhere,

contributions to the scientific literature of his profession. His reading had been so extensive, that it was once stated to the writer by a gentleman, who knew him well, and himself a man of great acquirements, that there was scarcely a subject on which he was not so well informed but he could tell all that had been written upon it, or knew where to find it; so much may the mind accomplish when not led astray by frivolous or less innocent pursuits. A life spent in the strictest sobriety, combined with habits of the greatest industry, could alone have enabled him to do what he accomplished, and these were with him, prominent characteristics.

He married the daughter of the Rev. Edward Fenwick,\* Vicar of Stamfordham, and with her spent a life of the most perfect domestic felicity. They had five children, all of which died young, except Walter, who succeeded his father. Dr. William Scott died at the age of sixty-nine years, after spending a life devoted to his own improvement and the benefit of others, and lies with his wife and family, buried at the entrance of the western door of the church, at Stamfordham.

His son Walter was also bred to the profession of medicine, and succeeded to his father's practice, as well as the estates of Stokoe. He inherited much of his father's ability, and energy, but was far his inferior in patient and steady

---

\* For a further notice of this family than is to be found in the sequel, the reader is referred to "The House of Clervaux, its Descents and Alliances," by W. Hylton Longstaffe, Esq., Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 1852.

perseverance. An early manhood spent in the army, was not at that time likely to develop to the best advantage, those higher literary promises he had given at collége, while a marriage with a lady, who both in herself and through her connexions was the source of much unhappiness to him, as well during her life as in after years, was another cause that led his mind to seek occupation in pursuits not congenial with those severer studies through which alone, lasting fame, or honourable achievement can be attained. The patrimony left him by his father at his death was so considerable that it enabled him to give up the practice of his profession, so that he lived a great part of his life on his private fortune. His was an age when frugality and forethought were not conspicuous features in the character of a country gentleman. A too free indulgence in expensive tastes, with a trustfulness in others extending to a negligence of his own interests, so injured his fortune, that the parliamentary measures passed at this time regarding the monetary circulation, which depressed the value of landed property, obliged him to part with his already mortgaged estates. Stokoe then went out of the family, which has since remained without a territorial designation.\* After his misfortunes he had again recourse to professional labours for a subsistence, and had to experience

---

\* I have no memorandum by me, to show the exact date when Stokoe was parted with. It went into the hands of his *agent*, a person named Scruton, of Durham, in whose family I believe it yet remains.

many trials and deprivations. Amidst all his reverses, however he preserved a taste for literature, and this, during his later life, became the great source of his enjoyments. He contributed many articles both on general literature and medical science, to the different periodicals of the day, and to the last amidst all his misfortunes, preserved his fresh and joyous spirit, trusting every one and hoping every thing. With him it might truly be said "The child was Father of the man," and all who had the pleasure of his acquaintance must ever remember, his kind, open and generous heart, his playful satire and his sparkling wit, that was "ever ready to set the table in a roar." He too lies buried at Stamfordham with his fathers; let us hope that death was to him the portal to a kindlier world,—

"Sedésque quietæ ;

Quas neque concutiunt venti ; neque nubila nimbis

Adspargunt ; neque nix acri concreta pruinâ

Cana cadens violat : sempérque innubilus æther

Integit, et largè diffuso lumine ridet."

*Lucretius.*

In these remarks I have endeavoured to meet the wishes of the Publisher, by furnishing some introductory notice to "The Pedigree of Scott, of Stokoe," which he informs me he reprints from a copy of the original "in the possession of John Fenwick, Esq., of Newcastle-on-Tyne, Attorney at Law, and the representative of the ancient family of that name." He further adds "of the original, though noticed by Lownds, few

copies are known to remain. It does not appear in the Bodleian Library or the College of Arms, and the only copy we are able to trace is that from which this is taken."

To the above, I must add that one copy is in my own possession, and I believe that another is in the Library at Abbotsford. I presume this from the fact, that in the Notes to Canto IV., of the Lay of the last Minstrel (Note XI) the author refers the reader to the original Pedigree as his authority, on a matter relating to the introduction of the Bend, as carried on the arms of Scott. This gives the work some historical interest, in addition to whatever other value it may possess from its rarity.

WILLIAM ROBSON SCOTT.

*St. Leonard's, Exeter,  
September 30th, 1852.*





# P E D I G R E E

OF

## — SCOTT, OF STOKOE,

In the PARISH of SYMONDBURN,

And COUNTY of NORTHUMBERLAND;

*and late of*

TODERICK, SELKIRKSHIRE,

NORTH BRITAIN.

COMPILED

*By* WILLIAM SCOTT, M. D.

---

But by your Father's worth if yours you rate,  
Count me those only who were good and great,  
Go ! if your ancient, but ignoble blood  
Has crept thro' scoundrels ever since the flood,  
Go ! and pretend your family is young ;  
Nor own your Fathers have been fools so long,  
What can ennoble sots, or slaves, or cowards ;  
Alas ! not all the blood of all the Howards. POPE.

---

NEWCASTLE :

Printed by T. ANGUS, Anno. 1783.

THE following Pedigree of the Scotts of Synton, Boonraw, Whitslade, Toderick, &c. are collected and compiled principally from Capt. Walter Scott of Satchell's Genealogical Essays; Nisbet's, and Mackenzie's Heraldry; Douglas's Scotch Baronage; the Lyon or Herald's Office of Scotland; and from a MS. Pedigree of the said Families, compiled by the late Mr Gladstains of Whitlaw, Roxburghshire, &c.

STAMFORDHAM,

(*Northumberland,*) *March, 1783.*

THE  
PEDIGREE  
OF  
SCOTT, OF STOKOE, &c.

---

IN, or about the year 1288, the then Baron or Laird of Buckcleugh, or Buccleugh, ancestor to the present Duke of that name, being then one of the wardens of the Scotch border, had at that time a younger son called John,\* who was lame;—This John, it would appear, was a younger brother to Sir Richard Scott, Knt.† of Rancleburn, or Buccleugh; who married in 1296, the heiress of Murdistone in Clydesdale.

This said John Scott they sent to St. Mungos, in Glasgow, for his education, intending, on account of his said lameness, to breed him a scholar, being unfit for the then border service;—after remaining there a considerable time, he married,

---

\* Vid. Capt. Walter Scott, of Satchel's Genealogical Essays, part 2d. p. 65. Edinburgh, printed, 1688; and re-printed in 1777, or 8.

† Vid. Douglass's Scotch Peerage.

and as it is hinted, not quite agreeable to his father's mind ; —and his posterity remained there “until the third Generation.” This said John Scott's grandson called

*3rd. Generation, from the Baron of Buccleugh.*

WALTER, was one of the Chamberlains, (i.e. agents or stewards) to the then Archbishop of Glasgow ; this was in the time of King Robert II. of Scotland, and in, or about the year 1389. The said bishop recommended this said Walter Scott, to his cousin of Buccleugh, on which the above Walter settled at Burnfoot, on the river Ale, Roxburghshire, North Britain, still continuing to act for the said bishop ;\*—this Walter was called by a cant name, Watt the Ratton, on account of his fellness and activity.† He married a daughter of Mr. Shortread of Headshaw, on the said river, or water Ale, and by her had four sons, viz. 1st. George, his heir of Synton, of whom afterwards ; 2d. — Scott, of Headshaw ; 3d. — Scott, of Glack ; 4th. — Scott of Askirk.‡

---

\* Roxburghshire, Dumfries, Peebles, and Selkirkshire, were all, or part, formerly in the diocese of Glasgow.

† Cant names were then, and for a long time afterwards, very common on the borders, as may be seen by looking into the learned Dr. Burn's Introduction to his History of Westmoreland and Cumberland ; Hume's History of the Douglas's ; &c.

‡ Vid. Capt. W. Scott's Genealogical Essays, part 2d. p. 66,—and the Scotch Baronage.



Some of the off-spring of these three last, continued a very considerable time, but their descendants are either now extinct, or cannot be traced.—The above eldest son

*4th Generation; & 1st of Synton.*

GEORGE, was settled at, or made Laird of Synton (as the other three brothers were of the places above mentioned) on the said river Ale, Roxburghshire, and married a daughter of Sir John Turnbull, of Falshope, in Selkirkshire; and by her had issue a son,

*5th Generation; & 2d of Synton.*

WALTER, who, in the reign of James II. married a daughter of — Scott, Laird of Hassendean, (ancestor to the brave Sir Alexander Scott of Hassendean, who was killed at Floudenfield in 1513\*) and by her had issue, two sons, John and Walter;—and was succeeded by

*6th Generation; & 3d of Synton.*

JOHN, who married a daughter of — Riddell, of that Ilk, ancestor to the present Sir Jo. Riddell, of that Ilk. Bart. on the said river Ale, Roxburghshire, and died without issue.—So was succeeded by his brother

---

*4th of Synton.* WALTER, who married a daughter to Sir J. Johnston, of that Ilk, ancestor to the Marquis of

---

\* See Guthrie's account of that battle, in his History of Scotland where he is mentioned.

Annandale,\* and had issue one son; and he died in, or about the beginning of the reign of James III. so was succeeded by his said son

*7th Generation; & 5th of Synton.*      GEORGE, who married a daughter of Tho. Scott, of Robertson, in Roxburghshire, and had issue two sons, Walter and William;—Walter, the eldest son, was designed of Synton, and William, the younger, of Harden.†—This was

---

\* Vid Capt. W. Scott's *Genealogical Essays*, part 2d. p. 66, and the *Scotch Baronage*.

† The lineal male descendants of the above Wm. Scott of Harden, the said younger son, are still living, and have greatly increased their possessions, and have intermarried with many of the greatest and best families in the south of Scotland. There are also several considerable and respectable families sprung from this of Harden, viz. — Scott of Gallowshields; — Scott of Wool; Scott of Rhaeburn;¶ and — Scott, the present possessor of the estate of Synton, &c. Vid. Capt. W. Scott's *Geneal. Essays*, part 2d, p. 13, 17, 19, 20, 66, &c.

¶ The illustrious Sir Walter Scott

—— “The mighty genius of romance,”

was a descendant of this branch of the family. The following he states as his place in the Pedigree. “I can tell you exactly my own place in the Pedigree; Sir Walter Scott of Harden, a man of considerable consequence during the great civil war, had several sons, the first, Sir William who succeeded his father, and which is now extinct in the male line, the second Gideon carried on the male line of the Harden family, and it at present flourishes in his issue. The Third son Walter Scott of Raeburn had two sons William and Walter, William carried on the line of the Raeburn family which is still extant, Walter, called Wat with the beard, was my father's grand-father, and is represented by me for want of a better.”—*From a private letter of Sir Walter Scott's to my father, and now in my possession.*

W. R. S.

in, or about the year 1467, so was succeeded by his said eldest son

*8th Generation;  
& 6th of  
Synton.*

WALTER, who married to his first wife ——— Cockburn, daughter to the Laird of Henderland, in Peebleshire, and had issue by her a son, Walter, and she died soon after. He married, 2dly, Margaret, the daughter of James Riddell of the Ilk, beforementioned;—he now settled the estate, or lordship of Synton, upon his said son Walter, by his first wife.—We now leave this first branch of the family of Synton, viz. the descendants of this said eldest son, Walter, by the first wife, and shall only observe, that they failed several ages after, and in, or about the year 1720, in the person of Archb. Scott, Laird of Boonraw, who was the last lineal male representative of this first branch of the family of Synton, as may be seen in the Note below,\*

(\* 9th Generation, and 7th of Synton.)

The said Walter of Synton, the eldest son of the first marriage, mentioned above, married a daughter of Js. Riddell of that Ilk, ¶ his own father's second wife's younger sister, and by her had a son, George, who lived at and was designed of Howcoate, in his father's lifetime.

(10th Generation, and 8th of Synton.)

This GEORGE married ——— Admiston, daughter of J. Admiston of Ednam, Esq. and by her had a son.

¶ *Vid the Scotch Baronage, under the article Riddell of Riddell, alias, of that Ilk.*

and as such was registered in the Lyon Office of Scotland.\* The above Walter Scott, the father, then (being, as it is observed, elder brother to William of Harden†) having thus settled his eldest son by his first wife, Laird of Synton, and he himself as yet being but young, retired,

*(11th Generation and 9th of Synton.)*

WALTER who married a daughter of Sir Arch. Douglass of Whittingham, and by her had two sons and a daughter, viz. George, his successor; Capt. Archibald, who died a bachelor; and Ann, married to Jno. Gladstains of Whitlaw, who had issue.¶

*(12th Generation, and 10th of Synton.)*

GEORGE, the eldest son, married — Gladstaines, daughter of the laird of Dodd, by her he had three sons, viz. Walter who died unmarried; George, his successor, and the first of them who was designed of Boonraw; Richard, parson of Askirk, Roxburghshire, who married a Miss Creighton, and by her had a daughter, Jane, who was twice married, but died without issue; this Richard was living at Askirk in 1688.

*(13th Generation, and 1st of Boonraw.)*

GEORGE married Miss Douglass, daughter to — Douglass of Garvald, and by her had a son, Archibald, and a daughter Ann: He was succeeded by his said son.

\* Vid. Nisbet's Extracts from the Lyon office, printed in his *Heraldry*, Vol. I. p. 99.

† Vid. Capt. W. Scott's *Genealogical Essays*, part 2d. p. 17, 67.

¶ *The late Mr. Gladstains, of Whitlaw, (a descendant from the above marriage) a learned and ingenious gentleman, who, among many other things, had made Heraldry and Genealogies a part of his studies, was so good as to favour us with pedigrees in MS. of the above families of Scott of Synton, Whitlade, &c. in 1769, and to which MS. we have been much indebted, in the present compilation.*

or went to live at Whitslade, on the said river Ale, Roxburghshire, with his said second wife, Margaret Riddell; this was in, or about the year 1487, and by her had four sons and eight daughters, and died at Whitslade about the age of 90. His having in the former part of his

(14th Generation, and 2d and last of Boonraw.)

ARCHIBALD, who died unmarried, as did also his said sister Ann. § And so here ends the old family of Synton, in this it's first male branch, in the person of the said Archibald, Laird of Boonraw, who died a bachelor, and at a very advanced age in, or about the year 1720, as mentioned above; he being the 14th descent from the Baron of Buccleugh. But this family seems to have disposed of, and left Synton. ¶ sometime in, or about the year 1610, and was afterwards designed of Boonraw, in Roxburghshire.—The male representation, therefore, of this first branch of the Synton family, at the death of the above mentioned Archibald, last of Boonraw, fell, therefore, clearly and directly upon the descendants of the eldest son of Walter Scott of the 8th Generation and 6th of Synton, by his second wife, Margaret Riddell, who had retired to live at Whitslade, as above related; and who were, therefore, the descendants of Robert Scott, of the 9th Generation, and first of Whitslade; for Walter of the 9th Generation, and 7th of Synton, the first branch of the family, and whose descendants were afterwards, designed of Boonraw, as now related; and the said Robert also of the 9th Generation, and first of Whitslade, were brothers, as they had both the same father, but not the same mother, their father having been twice married, as is above more particularly pointed out.

§ *Vid. Capt. W. Scott's Geneal. Essays, part 2d. p. 65, 66, 67 & 68.*

¶ *Synton came then, by purchase, or, some how or other, into the possession of the ancestors of the present possessor, and who is also of the name of Scott, and is a descendant from a younger branch of the same family, viz. from that of Harden.*



life lived at Synton, and in the latter part at Whitslade, has occasioned some little confusion, as he is thereby sometimes designed of Synton, and at other times of Whitslade. His sons were Robert, his successor in the estate of Whitslade; William of Huntley; James of Satchels; Thomas of Whithaugh-brae, all in Roxburghshire;—the male descendants from the said three younger sons, are either now extinct, or cannot possibly be traced; but a descendant from the third son, was Capt. Walter Scott of Satchels, who had in his youth, served under Gustavus the Great;—In the latter part of his life wrote a Book, partly in verse, dedicated to his friends of the name of Scott and Elliot, in which he gives an account of many of their pedigrees, and shews the connection of several of their families, together with some few anecdotes concerning them; and this he is believed to have done with great faithfulness and impartiality, and on that account he is frequently quoted or referred to, by the celebrated writer Nisbet, particularly in his 2d vol. of Heraldry, and we have been much obliged to him in compiling these pedigrees; he died without male issue:—there are but few particulars we are now able to discover concern-

ing this person's private history ;—and from his said book, tradition, and accounts handed down from his daughter, &c. he appears, however to have been in the British army in 1629, and that he entered into the service of the illustrious Gustavus, King of Sweden, probably, sometime in, or about the year 1631, and he seems to have been in the said service during all that king's great and astonishing wars in Germany and to have continued in the said army long after that king's death, for he does not appear to have returned home to Scotland, until a considerable time after the peace of Munster in 1648. He some time after his return home, and when an old man, married a young woman, by whom he had the said daughter, whom he called Gustava, in memory of his illustrious master ; and he seems to have lived to a very great age, for his said Book was not printed till 1688.—The eldest daughter of the said Walter of Whitslade, married the Laird of Black-Ormiston ; the 2d to —— Langlands of that Ilk ; the 3d to the Laird of Tosturnbull ; the 4th to the Laird of Ailmor ; the 5th to the Laird of Fanash ; the 6th to the Laird of Chappellmiddlemis ; and the 7th, first to Phillip Scott of Kirkhope, secondly,

to Wm. Scott of Wall, and thirdly, to Alex. Chisholm of Parkhill; all, or most of these places are, we believe, in Roxburghshire. He was succeeded in the estate of Whitslade by

*9th Generation & 1st of Whitslade.*

ROBERT, the eldest son of the second marriage, and next brother to Walter of the 9th Generation, and 7th of Synton, by the father's side, mentioned in the note below; this Robert married Helen, daughter to —— Rutherford, of Hunthill, Esq. in Roxburghshire (ancestor to Lord Rutherford) and by her had issue two sons, viz. Walter his successor; and Thomas, who was the first of Toderick, of him afterwards:— This Robert is said to have built, or at least finished, the old strong mansion house at Whitslade, now in ruins: —— Scott of Whitslade, is recorded in the Lyon or Herald's office of Scotland, from Synton; and as originally descended of the family of Buccleugh\*—This Robert lived at, and was called of Stirkshaws, in the said shire, in his father's lifetime, as did

---

\* As appears from Nisbet's extracts from the said register, printed in his heraldry, vol. I. p. 99, 100, &c, published in 1772;—The said Mr. Nisbet the celebrated writer on genealogies and heraldry, seems himself to have been some time keeper of the said office or records;— See also Sir George Mackenzie's Heraldry, p. 35.

also his said son and successor Walter, in the younger part of his life\* ;—which

10th Genera-  
tion; & 2d of  
Whitslade.

WALTER, the eldest son succeeded his father in the estate of Whiteslade, and was called the *Hawke*, on account of his sharpness and activity ; he appears to have been at the battle of Melrose in 1526 ; † He married a daughter of — Douglas of Cavers, in Roxburghshire, by whom he had three sons, to wit, Sir Wr. Scott Knt. his successor ; Robert, and Thomas.—The two younger sons seem either never to have been married, or at least to have left no male issue, as not the least trace of any descendant from either of them, can now possibly be discovered ; but Robert the second brother, appears to have been one of the 33 men, who were along with Sir Walter Scott of Buccleugh, (afterwards created Lord Buccleugh) in 1596, when he brought Wm. Armstrong of Kinment out of Carlisle castle, by a desperate but successful scalado of the walls of the said castle, in the

---

\* Vid. Capt. Walter Scott's Genealogical Essays, part 2d, p. 16;—and a pamphlet called a Description of the Parish of Melross, p. 51, by the Rev. Mr. Milne, printed in 1769.

† Vid. Milne's Description of the Parish of Melross, p. 51; Hume's Hist. of the Douglas's, vol. II. p. 90, 91.

night, in which was Lord Scroope with a very strong garrison.\*—He was succeeded by his above-mentioned eldest son,

11th Generation;  
& 3d of  
Whitslade.

Sir WALTER SCOTT, Knt. This Walter seems to have been a military man, and to have distinguished himself in the domestic and border wars, that were in the reign of Queen Mary, and her son James VI. ;—it appears also probable that he had served some time with reputation in Holland and the Netherlands; (who were then endeavouring to cast off the Spanish Yoke) Capt. W. Scott, in his before-mentioned book, appears to have had a very high opinion of his military merit, as he calls him by a kind of hyperbolical compliment the "*Chief of Chivalry*;" †—but the particular services in which he was employed or engaged in, or upon what occasion he was knighted, we cannot now ascertain:—He married Susannah Scott, daughter of ——— Scott of Thirlestain, in Selkirkshire, ancestor paternally to the present Lord Napier, ‡

---

\* Vid. A minute account of this affair in Capt. W. Scott's said book, who probably in his youth had conversed with some of the old people concerned in it, and particularly his own father, who appears to have been also one of them; part 1st, p. 11, 12, 13, &c.—See also Guthrie's Hist. of Scotland, vol. VIII. p. 332.

† Vid. Capt. W. Scott's Genealogical Essays, part 2d, p. 18, 73.

‡ Vid. Scotch Peerage.



and she dying without issue; he married, 2dly, Miss Scott, daughter of Sir J. Scott of Newbrough in Roxburghshire; and by her he had three sons, and a daughter, viz. Robert, his successor; Sir Walter successor to Robert; and Thomas successor to Sir Walter; and a daughter Isabella, who married her relation Francis, a younger son of Walter Scott of Harden, Esq.; and from which marriage, the Scotts now of Synton are descended:—the above Sir Walter died at Whitslade in a very advanced age, anno 1628,—and was succeeded by his said eldest son

12th Genera-  
tion; & 4th of  
Whitslade.

ROBERT, who entered early into the civil wars in the time of Charles I. and was killed at the great battle of Marston-moore, nigh York, in 1644;\*—he married Jane, natural daughter to Walter, Earl of Buccleugh, and appears to have had no issue, or at least no male issue, as he was succeeded in the estate of Whitslade by his brother,

5th of  
Whitslade.

Sir WALTER SCOTT, Knt.;—this Walter also entered pretty early into the civil wars, and so far distinguished himself, as to be knighted

---

\* Vid. Genealogical Essays, part 2d. p. 18.

either by Charles the I. or II.;—he was killed at the battle of Inverkeathing, nigh Dunfermline, in 1651;\*—he married a daughter of Sir Robert Stuart, of Ormistone, (brother to the Earl of Traquair) but by her had no issue;—so was succeeded by his brother

---

*6th of  
Whitslade.* THOMAS, who was very sore wounded at the said battle of Inverkeathing, where his brother was killed, but recovered;—he married Mrs. Mitchel, and had issue by her a son, and died in 1671.—Which son

*13th Generation; & 7th of  
Whitslade.* THOMAS, married Jane, daughter to Sir J. Hay, of Park, Bart. in the shire of Gallaway; and was living at Whitslade in 1688, when Capt. W. Scott's book, so often mentioned was published; and by his said wife had seven sons, viz. Thomas, his successor; John, who succeeded his brother Thomas in the estate of Whitslade; Walter; Robert, who was a surgeon at Hawick, in Roxburghshire, and died in, or about the year 1757, having many years out-

---

\* This was in a very smart action that happened in the above year, betwixt Major Gen. Brown, who commanded the Scotch for the King;—and Gen. Lambert, who commanded on the other side;—the Scotch were worsted, and a great many killed:—See Guthrie's Hist. vol. X. p. 36, Cromwell's Life, p. 210, Genealogical Essays, part 2d, p. 18.

lived all his brothers ; Francis ; William, late an eminent physician at Worcester ; and James. —All of whom died without issue, except the eldest son

*14th Generation; & 8th of Whitslade.* THOMAS, who married a daughter of Sir J. Scott, of Ancrum, Bart. in Roxburghshire, and by her had two daughters, viz. Elizabeth and Janet ;—Janet died unmarried ;—and Elizabeth married Mr. William Macdougall, brother to — Macdougall of Mackerstoun, in Berwickshire, by whom she had issue.—But was succeeded in the estate of Whitslade by his brother and male heir,

*9th & last of Whitslade.* JOHN, who was never married and sold the estate of Whitslade in, or about the year 1722, and died some few years afterwards ; and which estate consisted at that time of Whitslade, Castlilside, two large farms called Readfordgreens, Askirk, Askirkmill, Salanside, Bradley, &c. &c. all in Roxburghshire.

So here ends (as far as we can possibly find out) the male line of this principal branch of the family ;—for since the death of Arch. Scott last of Boonraw, in 1720, before-mentioned, the male representation therefore of the Synton family fell directly upon this branch of Whitslade ;

—as Walter of the 9th generation and 7th of Synton, and Robert, his next brother, also of the 9th generation and 1st of Whitslade; were brothers by the father's side, as has been more particularly shewn before:—and the last male of this Whitslade branch who was living, was Robert, the fourth son, above-mentioned, who was a surgeon in Hawick, Roxburghshire, and who died at a great age in 1757;—and he like his relation Archibald, last of Boonraw, was exactly the 14th descent from the Baron of Buccleugh.

We now, therefore *return to Thomas, the first of Toderick*, who was next brother to Walter of the 10th generation, and 2nd of Whitslade, before-mentioned; upon whose descendants, the male representation of the above families of Synton, Whitslade, &c. now clearly and directly devolved.—Which

*10th Generation; & 1st of Toderick.* THOMAS, seems to have settled at Toderick, on the before-mentioned river Ale, Selkirkshire, sometime between the years of 1550, and 1560;\*

---

\* In a seat in the old Kirk at Selkirk, belonging to Toderick, was the name of Thomas Scott, anno 1557.—This Thomas Scott of Toderick is recorded as next brother to — Scott of Whitslade, in the Lyon-office, and as of Synton, and originally descended from Buccleugh: Vid. Nisbet's Extracts, printed in his Treatise of Heraldry, specul. and practical, vol. 1. p. 90, 100, &c.

—he married ——— and had issue two sons, to wit, Thomas his successor, and Walter ; —as to the said second son Walter, we can find nothing further concerning him, than that it appears from Capt. W. Scott's book before-mentioned, that he also was one of the 33 persons, who along with Sir Walter Scott of Buccleugh, by a sudden and well-conducted coup-de-main, in 1596, took William Armstrong of Kinment out of Carlisle castle in the night, as mentioned before, in which was Lord Scroope and a very strong garrison, and which was deemed at that time a very gallant exploit ;\*—this said Walter seems never to have been married, a thing very common with younger brothers in this country, in those times.

11th Genera-  
tion; & 2d of  
Toderick.

THOMAS, the eldest son above mentioned, married Jane, daughter of Robert Pringle of Clifton, Esq. in Roxburghshire ; and by her had issue three sons and three daughters, viz. Walter, his successor ; William, who married and settled at Milsington, in the above shire, where his posterity still remains, and from whom the Scotts now of Girnwood, and Singlee,

---

\* Vid Genealogical Essays part 1st, p. 12; Guthrie's Hist. of Scotland, vol. VIII. p. 332; Douglas's Scotch Peerage.

also in the said Roxburghshire, are descended ; —Robert, who went into the army, and lived till he was about ninety-two years of age, but was never married ; and what military operations he was concerned in during his long service, we cannot now learn, further than that he had the direction of some part of the artillery in the royal army, in 1715, at the battle of Shirreffmoor, where he behaved well ;—he was a man of great simplicity of manners, and of great integrity and honour, he died in the garrison in Edinburgh castle in 1752 :—The daughters were, Mary, married to Dr. Rutherford of Jedburgh, by whom she had issue ;— ——— to ——— Scott of Baillie-Lee, in Selkirkshire, who had issue ; Ann, who died unmarried.

*12th Generation; & 3d of Toderick.*

WALTER, the eldest son above-mentioned, succeeded his father, and married Elizabeth Kerr, daughter of Sir Thomas Kerr, of Fairnalee, in Roxburghshire, by whom he had one son, Thomas, his successor ; and seven daughters ; the eldest daughter, Jane, married William Elliot of Hariot, Esq. Elizabeth married Henry Elliot of Bells,\* brother to the said Elliott of Hariot ;

---

\* By whom she had a great many children, and among others a son Walter, who was surgeon to the *Wager* ship of war, belonging to Lord Anson's squadron, and who along with the Hon. Mr. Byron,



Nelly, 1st to John Elliott of the Peal, and 2dly, to the Rev. Mr. Hume; Janet to Mr. Purdon of Hawick;—all these places are in Roxburghshire, except the Bells, which is in Northumberland; Christian to Mr. George Dennison, writer to the signet at Edinburgh; Margaret to Mr. David Scott of Mirrylaws,\* nigh Dumfries; Violet to — —, in Lothian;—they had all issue except Nelly.—The above Walter died in 1722, and his said son

*13th Generation; & 4th & last of Todrick.*

THOMAS succeeded him, and who was in the commission of the peace for Selkirk and Roxburghshire, and was educated at the University of Glasgow; he married Mary, second daughter and co-heir of Robert Scott of Scotsbank, Esq.†

---

Mr. Hamilton, and some others, staid with the captain after the loss of the said ship, and after almost all the rest of the crew had deserted him, and who along with the said captain and the others; after undergoing almost unheard of sufferings, he died a few days before they reached the Spanish settlements of Chili;—See Byron's Narrative of the loss of the said ship, where an excellent character is given of him.

\* This David, has a son also called David, now a Captain in the Royal Regiment of artillery, and who has served this war in America with great reputation, and has distinguished himself in various capacities;—Vid. a Character of him in the St. James' Chronicle, Jan. 23d, 1783.

† Who was a member of the last Scotch parliament before the union, for the Borough of Selkirk;—he had also two daughters more,

in Selkirkshire, in the year 1708, and by her had issue five sons and two daughters, viz. Walter his successor; Robert, who died young; Thomas, who went to sea, in or about the year 1740, and was at sea during all that war, where he received several wounds, and also lost an eye;—about the year 1750 he entered into the East India Company's service, where he remained 13 or '14 years he now (1783) lives retired, and has no issue; the particulars of his history and adventures we do not exactly know, further than that he has undergone incredible hardships and fatigue, as well as having been at several sea engagements:—John and Patrick, his two younger sons, also went to sea, and both soon after died unmarried.—Janet, his eldest daughter, married, 1st Mr. Howie, surgeon in Selkirk, by whom she had children, but they all died young; and 2dly, to the Rev. Mr. David Brown, minister of Selkirk, by whom she had a daughter;\* this Janet was an excellent good

---

one of whom was married to Mr. Mercer of Selkirk or Kirtley; the other to Mr. Fenton of Millenearn, in Perthshire: he was of the family of the Scotts of Dryhope, in Selkirkshire.

\* Mary, who married Andrew Wight, of Ormiston, Esq in East Lothian, by whom she has issue.

woman, in every sense of the word, she died at Ormiston in East Lothian in 1767 :—Elizabeth, his youngest daughter, is still living, and unmarried.

The said Thomas married, 2dly, Jane, sister to John Elliott of Peal, in Roxburghshire, and relict of Mr. Thomas Pringle of Kirton, in the said shire, but by her had no issue :—This Thomas having lived genteely, and perhaps a little too liberally, hurt his fortune ; and in 1746 sold his estate and mansion house of Toderick, having also some years before sold the estate of Wester Essenside in Roxburghshire ;—He died in 1753, at Selkirk, and was buried at Askirk, in an isle or vault at the south side of the said church, which isle is now in ruins, or rather in a great measure, totally removed ;—the arms are still on the seat in the said Kirk, that belongs to Toderick, cut in wood, and the date 1622.

*14th Generation;  
& 1st of  
Stokoe.*

WALTER, the eldest son above-mentioned, succeeded his father, and served some time in the horse-guards, he married in 1732, Jane, only daughter and heir of Wm. Robson of High Stokoe, gentleman, in the parish of Symonburn, and chapelry of Falstone, and county of Nor-

thumberland;\* by whom he had issue about twelve children, all of whom died young, except two sons and two daughters; viz. William, of whom afterwards; Patrick, a Doctor of Physick, who settled at Douglass, Isle of Man, and married Annas, daughter of the Rev. Mr. Nelson, late of Stamfordham, in Northumberland, and by whom he has now issue three sons, viz. John-Nelson, Walter, and William;—his eldest daughter, Mary, married Mr. John Best of Duncklywood, in the said parish of Symonburn, and county of Northumberland, and has issue; — Jane, married to Mr. Paul Blakey, of Newcastle upon Tyne, by whom she has issue.

---

\* All that we can learn at present of this family of the Robsons is, that Geofroy Robson, great grandfather to the above Jane, was possessed of Charlton Townhead, where he lived, and Bosehill nigh Bellingham, in Northumberland,—that he had a son John, who lived at, and was possessed of Shilburnhaugh, in the Parish of Symondburn and the said county of Northumberland, and that either he, or his father, sold Bosehill, for it went out of the family, some how or other, about that time;—This John Robson of Shilburnhaugh, married — Charlton, a daughter of Mr. Charlton, laird of Hackuphill, in the above Parish and county with whom he is said to have got the above mentioned High-Stokoe;—This John by his said wife had a son, William, and a daughter, Beallie, who married Mr. George Gray, by whom she had many children, several of whom are still living;—their said son William married Elizabeth, daughter to Mr. Todd of Leadbirks, nigh Haydon-Bridge, Northumberland, and by her had an only daughter, the above Jane.

The above Walter Scott, now of Stokoe, by the failure of the Synton family in the person of Archbd. last of Boonraw, in or about the year 1720 before-mentioned;—and that of the Whit-slade family, in the person of Robt. Scott in 1757, as has been already shewn;—is now therefore the direct male representative of the old family of Synton, and also of that of Whit-slade and Toderick, &c.—and is exactly the 14th descent from the Baron of Buccleugh, mentioned in the 19th page;—and since the coming off from the said family, of his first direct ancestor, it is now in or about 495, or 500 years.

15th Genera-  
tion; 2nd of  
Stokoe.

WILLIAM his eldest son, above-mentioned, also a Doctor of Physic, and the compiler of this Pedigree; he settled at Stamfordham in Northumberland, and married in 1759, Martha, daughter of the Rev. Mr. Edward Fenwick,\*

---

\* That the Fenwicks are one of the oldest and best families in Northumberland, and has split into many very considerable branches, is a thing well known, and may be seen by looking into Wallis's Antiquities of Northumberland, and others;

“Insigni et illustri Fenwickorum progenie,

————— Celeberrimo sanguine,” &c. §

However, all that we can learn concerning this branch is, that Am-

§ *Vid. Antiquit. of Northumberland, vol. II. p. 406, 157, 527, &c.*

Vicar of Kirkwhelpington in the said county of Northumberland, by whom he had issue four children, two of whom died in their infancy, the other are Walter, and Edward-Fenwick.—

---

brose Fenwick, who was a Woolen-draper in London, in or about the time of King Charles the First, and who is said to have been a younger son of the Fenwicks of Meldon in Northumberland, which Fenwicks of Meldon were a younger branch of the Fenwicks of Fenwick-castle and Wallington in the said county:—This said Ambrose had a son Edward, who was vicar of Stamfordham in Northumberland, and who married a daughter of Sir Francis Liddell of Redheugh, in the county of Durham, by whom he had issue, two sons and a daughter;—he married, 2dly, Mrs. Robinson of Black-headon, in Northumberland, but by her had no issue.

His eldest son, called Ambrose, succeeded him in the living of Stamfordham, and married Miss Bradley, daughter to Mr. Bradley, Attorney at law in Newcastle upon Tyne, but left no issue;—Edward, his second son, was vicar of Kirkwhelpington in Northumberland, and married Ann, daughter to Mr. Newton, of Hackwell, in the said county, by whom he had several children, of whom the above Martha was the youngest.

*The above-mentioned Sir Francis Liddell of Redheugh, is supposed to have been a second son of Sir Thomas Liddell, the first Baronet of Ravensworth-castle, in the county of Durham, and ancestor to the present Lord of that name; this Sir Francis married, "Agnes, daughter and sole heir to Sir Wm. Chaytor of Croft, in com. Ebor. Knt. relict, 1st of Nicholas Forster of Bambrough in com. Northumb. and 2dly, of — Dawson, near Rippon;—and he had a son Francis, married to Frances, daughter to Nicholas Forster, of Bamburgh;—but this son seems to have been by a former wife, for it is said, the above Sir Francis Liddell, had been twice married."—Vid. English Baronage, published in 1741, in quarto, in a note, under the article, Liddell of Ravensworth-castle.¶*

¶ For a detailed account of the Pedigrees of the Families here re-



Edward Fenwick died without leaving issue. After spending a life devoted to his professional duties, the labours of which were softened by the consciousness of success and a home of perfect domestic felicity, the above William Scott died November 18th, 1802, at the age of sixty-nine years, and lies with his wife and Family, buried at Stamfordham.

*16th Generation;  
& last of  
Stokoe.*

WALTER SCOTT, the only surviving son M.D. of Stamfordham, a justice of the Peace for Northumberland and sometime Master of the Free Grammar School, was born August 12th, 1761. He married first, Eleanor Walker, who died without issue, and secondly, Mary Bell, by whom he had issue—William Robson Scott; Walter John Scott, born October 18th, 1818, now living unmarried; and Martha Jane, born 1st February 1812, who is married to William Forster of Stamfordham but has no issue. The above Dr. Walter Scott having lived perhaps too liberally, was obliged to part with the paternal

---

ferred to, see a recent work by W. Hylton Longstaffe, Esq., on "The House of Clervaux, its Descents and Alliances. Newcastle-on-Tyne. 1852, Here the Fenwicks as descended through Frances Liddlell, from Agnes Chaytor are traced through the house of Clervaux to Charlemagne the Emperor of the West.

W. R. S.

Estate of Stokoe, as well has his property elsewhere.—He died February, 1831, aged seventy years. and also is buried at Stamfordham.

*17th Generation.*

WILLIAM ROBSON SCOTT, Ph. Doc., of St. Leonard's Exeter, the eldest son and present representative of the family was born January 11th, 1811. He married Mary Mandall, daughter of Thomas Mason, Esq., of Doncaster, Attorney at Law, by whom he has issue Walter Scott, born August 8th, 1843; Mabel Fenwick and Mary Mason (twins) born Dec. 21st 1845, and William Henry Scott, born July 17th, 1849.————

## A R M S .

*“Scott of Boonraw as representative of the family of Synton, or, two mullets in chief and a crescent in base, azure; Crest, a nymph holding in her dexter hand the sun, and in her sinister, the moon, all proper; Motto, REPARABIT CORNUA PHÆBE:”*—Vid. Nisbet’s Heraldry, vol. 1. p. 99, 100.

And the above, or something nearly the same, seems to have been the original and ancient Coat of most, or all of the name of Scott, in the south parts of Scotland,\*

Scott of Whitslade appears to have carried for some descents, the same Arms as those above of Scott of Boonraw, or Mr. Gladstains says in his MS., that he had seen the *“same engraved or painted in the old house[at Whitslade,”* and that they had *“two mermaids proper, for supporters:”* but of later times *“Scott of Whitslade, descended of Synton”* carried *“or, on a bend azure, a star betwixt two crescents of the first, and in chief a broken lance, gules; Crest, a hand issuing out of the torse holding a broken*

---

\* Vid. Capt. Scott’s Geneal. Essays, part I, p. 41, 43, 44.

spear; *Motto*, AMORE PATRIÆ." Vid. Sir Geo. Mackenzie's Heraldry, p. 35; Nisbet's vol. I. page 99.

"*Thomas Scott of Toderick, a second brother of the family of Whitslade, or, on a bend azure, a star of six points between two crescents of the field, a broken lance, gules, with a crescent for difference; Crest, the head of a lance proper; Motto, PRO ARIS ET FOCIS.*" Vid. Nisbet, vol. I. p. 100.

On the seat in the Kirk at Askirk, belonging to Toderick, at this time (1783) are the following Arms cut in wood, to wit, *or, on a bend azure, a star of six points between two crescents of the field, and in base, a buck's head and neck, proper*;—the date 1622.

Mr. Gladstains in his MS. observes that, "*all persons who have any notion of heraldry laugh at those who claim their descent from the family of Buccleugh for bearing in their Arms the bend, as it is not at all the original Arms of Scott, but carried by Buccleugh as marrying the heiress of Murdistone of that Ilk, in 1296; and that all those who came off from the said family before the said marriage, ought to carry as Scott of Boonraw above, with their proper differences.*"

And on this account it is very probable that Scott of Harden, before-mentioned, descended of Synton, although not the male representative of that family, did formerly "*carry, or, on a bend azure, a star of six points betwixt*

two crescents of the field, and in the sinister chief point a rose gules, stalked and barbed vert, for difference :—But of late as descended of Scott of Synton, he carries, or, two mullets in chief, and a crescent in base azure ; Supporters\* two mermaids proper, holding mirrors in their hands ; Crest, a lady richly attired, holding in her right hand the sun, and in her left a half moon ; Motto, REPARABIT CORNUA PHÆBE.”—Vid Nisbet’s Heraldry, vol. I. p, 99, 100. ; Sir Geo. Mackenzie’s, page 35.

---

\* In Scotland, supporters have been allowed or granted to the Arms of some commoners :—Vid Sir Geo. Mackenzie’s Heraldry, p. 93, &c.



## O M I S S Æ.

THE places mentioned p 20.;—and in the Notes to p. 22, 23, 24, 25; it has been there neglected to mention in what Shires, some of them are situated.

Headshaw,	is	in	Selkirkshire
Glack,	—	—	Roxburghshire
Askirk,	—	—	Ditto
Harden,	—	—	Ditto
Gallowshields,	—	—	Selkirkshire
Wool,	—	—	Roxburghshire
Rhaeburn,	—	—	Annandale
Howcoate,	—	—	Roxburghshire
Ednam,	—	—	Ditto
Whittingham,	—	—	Haddingtonshire.
Dodd,	—	—	Roxburghshire
Garvald, (we believe) in			Ditto.

## C O R R E C T Æ.

Newbrough,	p. 31, is in	Selkirkshire
Singlee,	p. 35, — —	Ditto.



2

RUSTIC SKETCHES;  
BEING  
RHYMES ON ANGLING  
AND OTHER SUBJECTS  
ILLUSTRATIVE OF RURAL LIFE, &c.,  
IN THE  
*Dialect of the West of England;*  
WITH NOTES AND A GLOSSARY.

BY G. P. R. PULMAN,  
AUTHOR OF  
"THE VADE-MECUM OF FLY-FISHING FOR TROUT,"  
"THE BOOK OF THE AXE," &c. &c.

---

LONDON:  
JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD ST. COVENT GARDEN.  
MDCCCLIII.

PRINTED BY JOHN GRAY BELL,  
19, BEDFORD COURT, COVENT GARDEN.

TO  
Mr. William Fulman,  
*Of Axminster, Devonshire,*

THIS LITTLE VOLUME IS INSCRIBED BY  
HIS AFFECTIONATE BROTHER.



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE "schoolmaster" will probably very soon efface all the more prominent characteristics of the ancient English dialects which yet are lingering in the rural districts.

No one can doubt that the "uncouth" and "vulgar" phraseology (as "gentility" sometimes calls it) of those who lead their toilful lives "remote from towns," are the remains of the tongue which Alfred spoke, and the foundation of the English language of the present day. "That among an unlettered race," says Mr. Akerman, "there should be much in their speech which may be denominated vulgar, is unquestionably true; but there are also a great number of words and phrases which are as certainly the remains of an old tongue once used in England even by the educated." \*

It is but natural that an ancient tongue should linger longest among a *rural* population; for that population is generally stationary in its habits, it mixes little with the "higher orders," and, unfortunately, it has not hitherto been deeply penetrated by the light of Education.

The traveller through the different English shires, is

---

\* Spring-tide; or, the Angler and his Friends—a very delightful little country book.

always forcibly struck with the peculiarities of brogue which manifest themselves. A highly educated man finds it difficult, indeed, to understand the rustic conversation of his own locality; while that of a distant county is almost unintelligible to him. The difference between the two is sometimes one of pronunciation, rather than that of actual words, arising, often, from mere local circumstances, independent of the original root. But in other cases it is a difference of words, which, to him, are like the words of a foreign language, as indeed, they really are, in one sense.

The great root of nearly all our provincial dialects, as already stated, is the Saxon language; and the modern variations arise partly from the corresponding variations in the original dialects of the tribes which came from the different parts of Germany, and partly from the subsequent incorporation of modern words, which, in the course of ages, have become imported, in a greater or a less degree, and in one part of the country more than in another.

The language of the West Saxons is undoubtedly the parent of the rustic dialects of those parts of the West of England in which that people established their rule; for although the difference in pronunciation in each of the different counties, and even in different parts of each county, is considerable, yet there is a remarkable simi-



larity in the words and phrases of the whole, which can, in almost every case, be traced to the Saxon root. All these differences, then, may be safely said to constitute *varieties* only of one and the same dialect.

The following songs, professed to be written in the dialect of the West of England, or rather of that part of it which composed the Saxon kingdom of Wessex,\* are really, to speak with greater exactness, written in the particular *variety* of that dialect which prevails in the neighbourhood of Axminster, the most easterly town of Devonshire, on the immediate borders of Somerset and Dorset. The difference in the pronunciation of many words by persons in the neighbourhood of that town and those residing only a few miles to the west of it, is very marked, and is indicative, perhaps, of the more recent influence of the language of the aboriginal race which

---

\* Cornwall, we need hardly annote, is not included in this dialect. It was the last stronghold and unmolested retreat of the ancient Britons when they were driven westward by the advancing Saxon. The foundation of the Cornish dialect may therefore be more correctly considered the language of the aboriginal British race. That ancient language itself, indeed,—or rather a form of it,—was currently spoken in Cornwall down to the middle of the sixteenth century, and it has not been totally extinct longer than a hundred years. The last person who could speak Cornish was Dolly Pentrath, an old fish-wife near Penzance, who died about the middle of the reign of George III. It greatly resembled the Welch language. (another form of the ancient British,) which is still a long way from being absorbed by the English.

retained possession of a great part of Devonshire for centuries after the West Saxons had driven them out of the more eastern parts of Wessex.\*

Considerable care has been taken in adapting the orthography as closely as possible to the pronunciation, and only a very few explanations, perhaps, are necessary to obviate all difficulty on the part of the reader :—

The letter *a*, when sounded broad, as in *man*, is distinguished by the long accent (-); *māin*, for example.

*E* is invariably pronounced as in French, or like *ay* in our English words *may*, *day*, &c.

*Ee*, standing alone, are intended to take the proper sound of the letter *e*.

*I* is always uttered thick, as if written *ui*. [This is very different from the sound of *I* in the Devonshire dialect, in which it resembles that of *āi*. *U*, in the same dialect, has exactly the sound of the French *u*.

*V* and *z* are pretty generally substituted for *f* and *s*. There is, indeed, an invariable tendency to *thicken* the elemental sounds.

*O* is often sounded *au*, as in *auver* (over); and in some situations it resembles *oo* in *soon*, as in the Dorset dialect: *goo* (go) and *moore* (more) for instance.

---

\* See the Anglo-saxon Chronicle; William of Malmesbury, &c. These and other ancient authorities are quoted on this subject in the Book of the Axe, p. 119. Published by Longman & Co.

Dd is frequently substituted for *tt*. Thus bottom (a valley) is pronounced *boddam*.

Apostrophes mark the places of dropped letters.

It is of course impossible, within these limits, to do justice to a subject so extensive and interesting as that of the provincial dialects. The object of the writer, as far as the *style* of his doggerel is concerned, is simply to preserve a few specimens of a dialect with which he has from childhood been familiar, and which he is well aware is rich in materials for the study of those whose qualification is beyond that to which he possesses any claim. He has made "the gentle art" his most prominent subject because, having deeply enjoyed its delights, he should be only too happy to be the means of leading others to enjoy them also. The peculiarity of style in which a few of those delights have been attempted, in a rustic guise, to be pourtrayed, might possibly, it was thought, receive an attention to which the abstract merits of the work, as a composition, could not justify a hope. Added to this was a sincere feeling of sympathy for the patient, kind-hearted, industrious, and simple-minded people by whom the dialect is spoken,—those who are too often set down as ungrateful, immoral, and unimprovable, because forsooth, their real character is little known, or else because they have been criminally neglected and despised.

CREWKERNE,

*July 15, 1853.*



## RUSTIC SKETCHES, &c.

---

### SPRING.

“Fled now the sullen murmurs of the North,  
The splendid raiment of the Spring peeps forth ;  
The universal green and the clear sky  
Delight still more and more the gazing eye.”

*Bloomfield.*

Here's Spring agen ! O happy time,  
Young an' zmling, blith an' gay,—  
Days da lingthen,  
Sunsheene stringthen—\*  
Natur's cloth'd wi' verdur prime,  
An' pleasant breezes lightly play.

Th' bonds ev wenter rude be broke,  
An' vrost an' snow be banish'd quite ;  
Agen es zeen  
Th' lears all green—  
Ver ice-bound vegetation's woke  
By th' zun's revivin' yeat and light.

---

\* “As the days get longer  
So the cold gets stonger.”—*Old Proverb.*

Wi' dāisies fiel's be dotted o'er,  
 An' in 'em healthy stock da bide,—  
     Sheep da browse  
     Wi' cāāves an' kows,—  
 Milk an' budd'r's urch in store,  
 An' fat beef's in their wull-blow'd hide.

There's bu'sting buds 'pon ev'ry sprej,  
 An' purmroses in ev'ry hedge—  
     Vilips white  
     An' gole-cups bright—  
 Decking natur' smart an' gay,  
 Ev comin' zummer faithful pledge.

Hail, lovely *marnin'* o' th' year—  
 Vorehurner ev a brighten'd *noon* !  
     Rising glad  
     Vrem wenter sad.  
 Th' birds vrem vorrin' lan's appear  
 Ta stap an' breed in zummer zoon.

Th' gookoo zings in ev'ry grove,  
 Th' active zwaller darts about ;  
     An' bedder still,  
     Think how you will,  
 Th' seys'n's come ver what we love—  
 Th' charmin' geam ev ketchin' trout.



Then, brother anglers, mind your eye,—  
 In order haa yer traps ta vishey—  
     Rod an' reyle,  
     An' line an' creyle,—  
 An' start away yer luck ta try :  
 Good spoort, wi' all my heart, I wish ee.

Spring is the chief season for the fly-fisher's operations—the period for the realization of all his hopes and anticipations—the bright spot—the sunshine of his existence.

---

### THE INVOCATION.

Come, rummidge up yer tackle, buoys—  
     Yer rods, an' lines, an' reels—  
 Ver once agen th' seys'n's come  
     Ta ram'le in the fiel's.

Ole blust'ring wenter's past away,—  
     Ets ice, an' vrost, an snow—  
 An' zmlin' Spring her mantle gay  
     O'er natur's face da drow.

On, on she comes wi' stealthy paze,  
     Now ling'ring now advancin',  
 As mǎidens try ther loviars fǎith—  
     Coquetin' an' entrancin'.

Th' air wi' new-born insects teems,  
 An' ev'ry copse an' grove  
 Vrem veather'd drots a chorius pours  
 Ev warbled notes ev love.

In mēads an' banks th' vlow'rs da spring,  
 An' buds an' leaves da sprout ;  
 An' spoorting in th' crystal stream  
 's th' sparkid-zided trout.

Then o'er ez hāānt, wi' gentle zweep,  
 Unvold yer treach'rous vlies,  
 An' wi' yer cunnin,' practic'd hand  
 Allure an' gāāin th' prize.

O be not we, like foolish vish,  
 Wi' glitt'ring things deceyv'd ?  
 We snatch th' boit an' veel th' sting  
 Too late to be releyv'd.



## PRAISE OF ANGLING.

“Without the most remote intention of upbraiding any with a fastidiousness or deficiency of taste—without wishing to make any body discontented with preconceived and long settled notions of the external, visible, and practical delights of this busy and various earth, or without affecting any undue advantage of choice on our part,—we do not hesitate to say that trout-fishing with the fly is the perfection of sublunary pleasure to those who are, in the full sense, brothers of the angle !”—*Atlas Newspaper*.

Let others zing ev *noble* deeds—

Ev battles fëace an' gory—

Ev chappin' off poor so'gers' heyds

An' callin' o'et *glory*.

Let others zing th'er stylish zongs

Ev palaces an' halls—

Ev theatres an' all belongs

Ta consarts an' ta balls.

Er let em zing about th' houn's,

An' prāise th' hoss er mare

That cars 'em slap-dash 'thurt th' groun's

Ta hunt th' fox an' hare.

Aye ! let 'em zing about th' gun,

An' glories ev Septimber,

An' tull about the'r shuttin' fun,  
 An' spees that they remimber.

An' *I* shall write, an' zing, an' tull  
 Th' plizures o' th' angle;  
 An' do et all ta pleyze myzull,  
 An' not wi' others wrangle.

Zo they mid dance, er shut, er fight,  
 Er hunt dru wet an' dry;  
 If they be pleyzed—why that's all right,  
 Ver fa'th an' zo be I.\*

---

\* “Fa'th an' zo be I”—The rustic mode of expressing the old courtly phrase “by my faith.” “Iss, fa'th,” so often used in most of the rustic dialects, is another form of the same expression.



## A RUSTIC ANGLER'S QUALIFICATIONS.

"Ridiculous to imagine that the highly varnished rod, the silken line, and the fantastically dressed fly are the great causes of success. Pshaw! Is *skill* to be put out of consideration? How many are there in humble sphere, who, when other means fail, contrive to gain an honest livelihood with their rude rods and clumsy tackle—filling their baskets with perfect ease, while your gentleman fly-fisher, with all his *science*, and neatness, and 'properly selected' flies, can seldom manage to move a fin."—*MS.*

My rod ez but a hazel stick—

I got a coosish line—

My hooks be small, but temper'd wull,

My gut ez roun' an' fine.

An' as ver vlies, I don't kear much

Ver moore 'n a sart er two;

Let's hev th' parmer ribb'd wi' gold,

Th' yaller dun, an blue,

An' I'll ketch vish. When work ez skess

'T 'ill help me on a bit;

'Tis honist fun, but zum da zay

I proach th' trout I git.

'Tis no zitch thing! Th' truth es this,—

I knows where vish da lie,

Can hook 'em firm, an 'play 'em sããf,

An' lightly drow my vly.

Zumtimes I mit th' fine-rod voke  
 That tries ta git a dish ;  
 But Lor' a mǎācy 'pon my soul,  
 They nivver ketch a vish !

I'll tull 'ee, now, what they da do,  
 Ver I da know 'tis done,—  
 They use th' zilver hook\* ver boit,  
 While we gits all th' fun.

They buys th' vish that I da ketch  
 At vippence ver a poun',  
 But when I gooze out by th' day†  
 They gees me half-a-crown.

We really believe that the angler by trade is often a much calumniated wight. Experience has convinced us that in many cases he is, in every sense, AN ANGLER—possessing all the necessary qualifications for the highest rank in the craft, and therefore entitled to commensurate respect. On the other hand, some of the class undoubtedly deserve to be repudiated, on account of their unfair, unsportsmanlike, and poaching habits. In palliation, to be sure, a great deal may, in some cases, be said of the claims of a dependent family, and we are not amongst those who would lightly estimate such claims upon the affections of a loved and loving parent—even if his heart should beat beneath a fustian coat.

---

\* *Th' zilver hook*—i. e. Money.

† When hired for the day.



## THE PLEASURES OF ANGLING.

“No life, my honest scholar,—no life so happy and so pleasant as the life of a well-governed angler. For while the lawyer is swallowed up with business, and the statesman is preventing or contriving plots, then we sit on cowslip banks, hear the birds sing, and at night retire to some friendly cottage, where the landlady is good and the daughter innocent and beautiful—where the room is cleanly, the sheets smelling of lavender, and twenty ballads are stuck against the wall! There we can enjoy the company of a talkative brother angler, have our trouts dressed for supper, tell tales, sing songs, and pass away a little time without offence to God or injury to man.”—*Izaak Walton*.

A happy life ez pass'd by we  
 Who in th' fiel's da like to be,  
 An' by th' stream ta strake about  
 Wi' rod an' line, a-ketchin' trout.  
 We don't want carpet-rooms ner halls,  
 Ner music-consarts, dancing balls,  
 Ner nit no coaches pāinted fine,  
 Wi' liv'ry sarvan's up behine.

While we can treyde th' grass, an vish,  
 An' hev th' luck ta ketch a dish,  
 An' hear th' birds ta zing za gay,  
 An' zee th' gurt fat bullicks play  
 (Then think what famious beef they'd make,  
 An' how we'd eyte a gurdld steak);

In eyv'nin' zit our furn's among,  
 An' tull our tale an zing our zong,  
 An' blow a cloud an' drink a pot—  
 We'll invy no man what 'e 've got.

---

### AN ADVENTURE.

"Should a bull attack you, take to your heels."—*Stoddart.*

We vishin' chaps, bezides th' fun  
 We haas among the trout,  
 Da git some precious larks an' rigs  
 When we be out about.  
 Zumtimes we laughs at other voke—  
 An' that we likes th' bes';  
 But they da mind an' laugh at we,  
 When we be in th' mess.

Now, I wiz vishin', 't'other day,  
 Among a lot o' kows,  
 That caper'd, vrisk'd, an' scouc'd about,  
 An' made all sarts o' rows.  
 I bant a vurry courage chap  
 'Mong bulls an' all that there,\*  
 An' zo I putt my ligs ta groun'  
 Za hard as I ked tare.

---

\* "That there" and "this here" are similar forms of expres-

An' there wiz sitch a sight o' voke  
 A-walkin' on th' road—  
 Meyn an' wimmin, buoys an girls—  
 An' one er two I know'd.  
 Now when th' kows zeed I start off,  
 They vollar'd me, in coose,  
 An' kick'd, an hurn'd, an' drow'd the'r tääils,  
 An' blarid like th' deuce.

Then all th' people laugh'd an' gurn'd,  
 But I kip'd on th' same,  
 'Till I reych'd ta 'tother zide th' fiel',  
 An' jump'd out in th' lane.  
 Then all th' kows hurn'd back agen—  
 Th' voke call'd I a fool;  
 But I laugh'd it off, an' made 'em b'lieve  
 That one o'm was a bool.

---

sion to the French *celui-ci, celui-là*. The rustic says: "Theck man *there* 's my brother and thease one *here* 's my father," &c.

TH' MAN THAT WENT A-VISHIN';  
OR, THE MISHAPS OF A PRETENDER.

"Young 'gentlemen' may congratulate themselves, even in the absence of sport, of having exhibited attitudes which a dancing-master might envy."—*Sporting Magazine*.

"We know of one brother of the rod, residing in Edinburgh, who happened to strike his large salmon-fly into the flank of an ox grazing behind him. The animal, of course, took to his heels, dragging after it the astonished angler, who, in order to save his pirn-line, which was soon run out, forthwith exerted [himself] to keep pace with the rapid brute, although compelled at last to submit to the necessity of losing his tackle."

*Stoddart's Scottish Angler.*

'Twas on a fine an' breezy day,  
A likely one ver vish ta play,  
I took'd my rod an' tramp'd away  
    Ta hev a turn at vishing.  
Wull, zoon a chap I near did spy,  
Wi' varnish'd rod an' gaudly vly;  
A cockney youth, by gar, think's I,  
    At what he calls a-vishin!

Now this yer chap all smart was dress'd,  
Wi sheenin' shoes an' clothes th' best;  
He know'd za much I rightly guess'd  
    He'd nivver avore bin vishin'!

What capers ee did cut ! Ez arm  
 Zwāy'd roun' lik' drasher's in a barn ;  
 Ee'd rucky down th' vish ta charm  
     By what ee thought wiz vishin'.

Th' cockney was afeerd ez shoes  
 E'd dirted be, zo tap've ez toos  
 Ee'd pick ez way ; O what a gooze  
     Ta think ev gwine a vishin' !  
 An' zo, bum by, a lot o' kows,  
 Attracted by ez scrapes an' bows,  
 Come closely up ta stare an' browse  
     Behine th' man a-vishin' !

An' zwayin' roun' ez rod, ta last,  
 His hook in one o'm sticked quite vast ;  
 The kow cried " Boo," an' stood aghast  
     Th' man that went a-vishin' !  
 An' then th' kow turn'd roun' an' look'd  
 As thof ee'd zay " By gar, I'm hook'd "  
 An' zumthin' like th' words " I'm book'd "  
     Escap'd th' man a vishin' !

Off zot th' kow a spankin' space,  
 An' all th' rest zoon jin'd th' race,  
 An' wi' 'em (what a shockin' case)  
     Th' man that went a vishin' !

Dru mud a dirt, an' zoak's an' zogs,  
 They leyde th' way (th' vriskey dogs!)  
 A giein' zum delightful stogs  
     To th' man that went a vishin'.

Th' chap look'd roun' most piteous-*ly*,  
 An' beg'd ta help 'en out I'd try;  
 "O no! Da sar quite right," zes I,  
     "Th' man that went a-vishin'."  
 Zoon in th' mud ee left ez shoes,  
 Ez hat vall'd off, but on 'e goes;  
 Ee could'n' stap, zir, if ee'd choose—  
     Th' man that went a-vishin'.

Then dru a mud pon' splash they boll'd,  
 He pull'd;—th' hook let goo ez hold,  
 On backword in th' midst was roll'd  
     Th' man that went a-vishin'.  
 Zo now a warnin' larn all ye  
 That talk an' ac' presumptuously,—  
 Purtendin' *all* ta know, but be,  
     Lik' th' man that went a-vishin'.



## ZUMMER.

“Then Summer came, a matron fair,  
Showering June’s roses on the air,  
With field-flowers waving everywhere,  
In meadows bright ;  
With blissful sounds, with visions rare,  
A large delight.”—*Richard Howitt.*

Here’s zummer, hot an’ dry,  
Wi’ scarchin’ day an’ zwilt’rin night,  
Th’ zun, lik’ vire sheenin’ bright,  
In a blue an’ blazin’ sky,  
Th’ thu’sty groun’s\* da parch an’ bake,  
An’ cracks an’ crannies deep da make.

An’ all aroun’ we zees,  
’Pon hill an’ dale, th’ lan’skip scene  
A-color’d urch in deepist green—  
Heydges, groun’s,\* an’ trees—  
All, but a vew shart mont’s ago,  
Was bleak an’ bare beneath th’ snow.

---

\* The word “ground” is often used synonymously with *field*.

Th' vlowers, all bright an' gay,  
 Wi' zwit pervume da sceynt th' air,  
 An' th' wopse an buddervly da share  
 The'r zwitwess dru th' day ;  
 While eyv'ning's welcome cool da bring  
 Th' moth an' bat 'pon vlutt'rin' wing.

Young birds a-veather'd be,  
 An', stronger gittin' ev'ry day,  
 Zum hops about vrem sprej ta sprej,  
 While moore can peck an' vlee ;  
 An' wold ones, up 'pon trees za proud,  
 Da whistle love-zongs long an loud.

Th' farmer 've busy bin ;  
 Ez sheep 'ev shor'd, ez grass 'ev cut,  
 Ez carn ez gittin' brown's a nut,  
 An's apples vast da plin—  
 All showin' that though much 'e 've done,  
 A sight moore work e' 've got ta come.

Th' pankin' bullicks now  
 Lies under shady heydges cool,  
 Er else knee-deep stan's in th' pool,  
 At eyze the'r quid ta chow ;\*

---

\* At ease their *cud* to *chew*.—EXPOSITOR

While vly-teyz'd hosses, hot an' dry  
 Wi' workin' hard, trots invious by.

An' what a liddle drap  
 's th' river, dribblin' clare an' low !  
 There's har'ly room th' vly ta drow ;  
 Zo vishin' we mus' stap  
 'Till Antumn's vloods da cleynze th' stream  
 O' weeds that chucks\* en, ronk and green.

## ZUMMER MARNIN'.

"The lengthened night elaps'd, th' morning shines  
 Serene in all her dewy beauty bright."—THOMSON.

Th' stars da fade, th' moon ev zot,  
 Th' air ez rāā an' chill ;  
 An' a strake o'light—a glimmer fāint—  
 Ez zeed 'pon th' eystern hill.  
 'Tis th' dāānin' o' day—an' th' gradual light  
 Ez a-tekkin' th' place o' th' vast-vleein' night.

Tho' aērly 'tis, dru grass all wet  
 Th' angler on da plod,

\* Chokes.

Wi' worms all tough, an' shotted line,  
 An' girt long angling-rod.\*  
 Ez hook now 'e 've boited, an' at et he goos,  
 'Cause this is the time ver th' blackhead ta use.

An' ev'ry minnit th' light da bring  
 Et plainer about ta zee ;  
 Th' cocks da crow, an' th' larks da zing  
 While skyward they da vlee ;  
 Ta welcome wi' music th' uprisin' zun,  
 An' ta tull us below that th' day's a-begun.

Behine th' brow th' zun da peep,  
 Vast gittin' higher—higher ;  
 'Till zoon, vull up—a circle roun',—  
 's th' worl's sustāinin' vire.  
 An' earth da sim glad that es bright cheerful face,  
 Once moore 've a-com'd back vrem ez night-biding place.

Wi' shoulder'd shule an' peckiss, rathe  
 Ta work th' lab'ers starts,  
 A smokin' pipes as on they tridge  
 Wi' free and gaysome hearts.

---

\* The vulgar notion is, that the term "Angling" can be applied only to bait-fishing—it being highly improper if used in connection with either fly-fishing or trolling. We need scarcely add that there is no authority for this fine-drawn distinction.

Ver nort but a happy conteyntment ez theirs,  
 Unbeknow'd by th' *gurt*, 'mong the'r urches an' cares.

Th' dairy-voke be up'n about,  
 An' busy all as bees ;  
 Zum's 'way 'n th' groun' an' zum's at huome  
 Te mek th' budd'r an' cheese,  
 While out in th' barton th' bullicks da stan'  
 Ta wāit ver th' māids wi' the'r stool an' the'r can.

All natur' now's awak'd compleyte—  
 Th' zun ev mounted high,  
 An' hot an' bright ez beams da vall  
 Straight vrem a cloudless sky.  
 Zo 't's all up wi' 'wormin', an huomword da trot  
 Th' angler, wull pleyz'd wi' th' spoort 'e've a-got.

Worm-fishing is followed with greatest success in summer, during the mowing-grass season, from day break till the sun has risen so high as to fall full upon the water ; and the air cannot be too calm. What a temptation it presents to the angler to snatch himself from the arms of Morpheus, and to substitute for the enervating influences of too much sleep, the healthful inspiration of the morning freshness and of the indescribable beauties of awakening nature which then on every side present themselves to his admiration ! The bait most generally used is the *black head*, or meadow worm. See the "Book of the Axe," published by Longman & Co.

## ZUMMER EVENIN'.

“ While from the skies the ruddy sun descends,  
 And rising night the evening shade extends,—  
 While pearly dew's o'erspread the fruitful field,  
 And closing flowers reviving odours yield,—  
 Let us beneath these spreading trees recite  
 What from our hearts our muses may indite.”

PRIOR.

In a sey ev gold an' curmson clouds,  
 Outstratchin' dru th' west,  
 Th' zun, lik' a gilded sheenin' ball,  
 Ez zinkin' into rest.  
 An' ez ruddy light, aslant a-drow'd,  
 Da tinge th' fiel's, th' trees, an' road.

An' soun's as chermin' reych th' ear—  
 Th' distant bells be ringin',  
 Th' sheep da blake, th' bullicks blare,  
 An' th' birds be gayly zingin';  
 Ver ev'ry copse, an' grove, an' tree  
 Ez vill'd wi' the'r whis'lin' minstrelsy.

Th' blackbird 'pon th' thorn-bush zits,  
 Th' dursh 'pon th' elem high,  
 Th' rabbin, golefinch, cutt, and lark  
 Wi' one-er-t'other vie ;  
 An' strâin the'r liddle drots wi' zong,  
 In a gin'ral chorias loud an' long.

On th' river's bank th' angler stan's, '  
 An' hears an' looks delightid,  
 Injoyin' all th' beauties roun',  
 Bezides wi' spoort requitid ;  
 Ver th' constant inmates ev ez breast  
 Ez a thankful heart an' a mind at rest.

Th' bangin' trout be on th' feed,  
 An' bes' ver boit ta use  
 's a biggish vly, unless ta troll  
 Wi' th' mëany you mid choose.  
 Kill-divil then, er nat'ral vish,  
 If wull be spin'd, 'ill git ee a dish.

Now grad'ly noisy soun's be hush'd—  
 There's *twinklers* in th' sky,  
 An' in th' eyste th' gurt vull moon  
 Ez risin' clare an' high ;  
 An' th' grass ez tap'd wi' dew-draps bright  
 That sparlies in ez zilver light.



Th' silence now ez only broke  
 By th' night-bird's dismal call,—  
 Th' hurslin' leaves, an' th' ceyselless roar  
 O' th' tum'ling wauder-vall,  
 An' th' ripplin' stream gwine on t' th' sey,  
 Lik' Time gwine inta Eternity.

Nothing can be more delightful then a summer evening's ramble, with fly rod in hand, along the banks of a rippling trout-stream, if the heart be rightly attuned to the mysterious and elevating influences of the "sights and sounds" of which nature is then so prodigal !

---

### TH' TIME VER WALKIN'.

When zummer's zun's a-zinkin' slow,  
 An' 'zlant ez zittin' shades da drow ;—  
 When inta clouds o' curmson light  
 Ee hides ez zwelt'rin' beams za bright,  
 An' lingthy shades ev western hills  
 Th' spread-out valleys slowly vills ;—  
 When eyv'nin' breezes, calm an' cool,  
 Da ruffle soft th' glassy pool,  
 An' on 'en, makkin' tiny rings,  
 Th' diplin insec's lightly springs !  
 An' anglers use the'r "arm ev skill,"  
 Th'er empty bastics vast ta vill ;

When cows no longer blows an' panks,  
 In waunder half way up the'r shanks,  
 But cool da stan' an' drow th'er tails,  
 A-villin' 'vast th' wull scrub'd pails ;—  
 When birds da zing, in copse an' grove,  
 The'r songs ev zwit parental love—  
 Th' blackbird, dursh, an' lark up-vlyin',  
 Eych ta drownd th' t'other tryin' ;—  
 When bats da creype th'er holes vrem out,  
 An' drowsy beedles vlies about ;—  
 When children on th' village green  
 In noisy groups be playful zeen,  
 A-watch'd vrem winder an' vrem door  
 By restin' parents, fond tho' poor—  
 Th' father wi' ez ev'nin' *weed*,  
 Th' mother 'n sisters roun' en zeed,  
 An' brother snug an' cozy placed,  
 Th' arm o'n roun' ez zwitart's waist ;—  
 When Bob, th' blacksmith, 've wash'd ez face,  
 An' doughted out ez viré-place,  
 An' he an' all th' workmen tally  
 Plays skittles in th' *Dolphin* alley ;—  
 When bells da ring the'r evenin' peal—  
 Bells oft a-ring'd ver woe an' weal,  
 Ver widdin's gay an' fun'ral's drear  
 Ev old an' young, all lov'd ones dear ;—

When all yer daily work's a-done,  
 An evenin's lizher time's a-come,—  
 Then git yer lass ta tek yer arm,  
 An' walk her, lovin', roun' th' farm.

---

### A NIGHT EXCURSION.

“My lord sent to me, at sun-going-down, to provide him a good dish of trouts against the next morning by six of the clock. I returned answer, that I doubted not, God willing, but to be provided for at the time appointed. I went presently to the river, and fell to angle. \* \* \* \* I had good sport and made up the dish of Fish.”—BARKER'S DELIGHT, first published in 1651.

One zummer's night, zum furns an' I  
 Made up our minds ta zee  
 Wh'er twadd'n' pausable ta hāā  
 A midnight vishin' spree.  
 'Twas light as day, wi stars an' moon  
 All sheenin' clare an' high,  
 An' 'twas agreed that we shud use  
 Ver boit,—a darn gurt vly.

But fust, ta mek us caumfa'ble,  
 We bote a lot o' *stuff*  
 Ta haa a pick-nit\* under heydge,  
 When we'd got vish enough ;—

---

\* *Pic-nic.*

Zum shevvins an' a tender-box,  
 A dish an' vryin' pan,  
 Zum iggs an' bacon, vinnid cheese,  
 An' strong beer in a can.

Wull, off we started, all a-gog,  
 An' vish'd our vull desire,  
 An' then begun ta zit ta work  
 A-mekkin' in a vire.  
 That *zoon* was done, an' *zoon* th' pan,  
 Wi' iggs an' rashers fat,  
 Did hiss an' tiss, while waud'rin' mouths  
 Impatient roun' en zat.

An' when 't was done (a-māācy wull!)  
 An' fair betwixt us shar'd,  
 Wi' clapse-knives sharp an' bread ver plates,  
 Th' dicks was quickly clar'd.  
 An' then th' backey an' th' beer  
 Was nex' th' time o' day,  
 An' laughs an' jokes, an' zongs an' tales,  
 Did pass th' time away.

But vew zitch happy hours as that  
 Hev zince bin mine, by gar!  
 Ver tho' 'twas night, an' out o' door,\*  
 An' seytid 'pon a bar,

---

\* "*Out o' door*" is always used to imply *the open air*.

Itt bedder 'twas than in gay halls,  
 Wi heartliss cockscoms dres't,  
 An' vlintin' girls, ver fren'ship pure  
 Wiz ours, an' joy th' best.

Then āāderwards we vish'd agen,  
 An' putt on smalder vlies,  
 As daylight broke ; an' much we ketch'd,  
 Ver wull th' vish did rise.  
 'Bout zix o'clock we shut et up,\*  
 Wull pleyz'd was all th' party,  
 An' toddl'd huome, an' chāng'd our clothes,  
 An' eyte a brektus† hearty.

---

## TOWN AND COUNTRY LIFE.

Let they who like in *Cities* bide,  
 An' practice city usements—  
 Sneer at simple country life,  
 An' country voke's amusements ;

---

\* Stopped fishing.

† Breakfast.

Let they in smoky, disty streytes,  
 'Mong pavier, bricks, an' marter,  
 Waste th'er days an' break the'r nights,  
 An' mek ther lives th' sharter.

An' we will in th' *Country* stay,  
 Injoyin' country plizhures,  
 Rovin' weeld, as Natur's cheeld,  
 An' valuin' her trizhures;  
 Clim'in' up th' steep hill-zide  
 Wi' dog an' double gun,  
 Er rovin' by th' river wide  
 Injoyin' vishin' fun.

O these be *manly* sports, and these  
 Brings no hereããder zorra;  
 Can yer city chap zay he's  
 Leyves nothin' ver *ta-marra*?  
 A Country life 's th' one ver I,—  
 Betwixt 'm 's no compare;  
*Man* made th' town; th' country shows  
 God's vinger every where.\*

---

\* "God made the country, man the town." See Shipley and Fitzgibbon's *Treatise on Fly Fishing*, p. 13.

## AN INVOLUNTARY IMMERSION.

"When out of the water, trout appear to feel a great deal of pain, and as that is an unnecessary continuation of suffering, anglers generally despatch them the instant that they are off the hook. Eager fishers, when they have a prospect of success, sometimes neglect this, and we once witnessed rather a ludicrous retribution. A gentleman, who is now a professor at one of the Universities, had one day succeeded in landing a large trout, which he put into his basket alive, and, as the time was favorable, he began to fish with double ardour. But his hook got entangled in the bank, which was rather steep, covered with long grass and bushes, and contained the holes of water-rats, shrews, and, as was understood, otters. As he lay along the bank, and stretched down to disentangle the hook, the trout in the basket on his back gave a flutter, and the belt of the basket came in contact with his neck. The idea that *Lutra* had him by the throat, in vengeance for the inroad both upon his mansion and preserve, darted across the angler's mind. To escape from the foe he tried to start up, but the position had given his heels the buoyancy, and he pitched summerset-wise into the water."—*Mudie's British Naturalist*.

Among th' games that we da git,  
 There's one I ha'nt a-twold o' itt,  
     An' theck 'ell mak e shiver;  
 At leyst, I'll warn'y 't 'ood if you  
 Wiz on'y jist ta do et too,—  
     An' that's vall in th' river.



I vurry of 'n hurns across  
 Vrem kows, when I da think they'll toss,  
     An' zo da other voke ;  
 But zumthin' I've a-got ta zay,  
 That happen'd to me t'other day,  
     An' 'twas a famious joke.

I wiz vishin' vrem a highish place  
 A deepish hole that zwarm'd wi' dace,  
     An' th' bank was perp'ndic'lar,  
 An' in my bastic I'd a got  
 Ev darn gurt vish a purty lot,  
     An' heavy in partic'lar.

My line got hitch'd below, ta las',  
 Zo I lied along upon th' grass,  
     My bastic restin' 'pon my back ;  
 An' in cranin' down ta zit en free,  
 My bastic ee zwing'd roun', ya zee,  
     An' jerk'd me auver, neck an' crap.

An' there was I a-blowin', puffin',  
 Holl'rin', hoopin', spattin', snuffin',  
     An' pad'lin' roun' about ;  
 But sev'rel chaps that zeed me vlounder,  
 Aāder they'd laugh'd the'r faces rounder,  
     Come down an' help'd me out.

An' what a sparticle was I !  
Not a single dred upon me dry,  
    Vrem my gurt tooe ta my hey'd ;  
But whum I tackl'd lik' a shot,  
An' drink'd a glass o' zumthin' hot,  
    An' tum'l'd into beyd.



## AUTUMN.

“ Again the year’s decline ’midst storms and floods,  
The thund’ring chase, the yellow-fading woods,  
Invite my song.”—BLOOMFIELD.

Th’ *marnin*’ com’d, th’ *marnin*’ went,  
Th’ *noon*, all bright, was quickly spent,  
An’ now th’ eyv’nin’ o’ th’ year  
In fadin’ dress agen da ’pear.  
Th’ barley, wuts, an’ carn’s all reap’d,  
    An’ most o’t ’s hāāl’d ta mow,  
While busy in th’ valler groun’  
    ’s th’ harrer an’ th’ plough;  
An’ taties now they up da tek,  
    An’ wi’ th’ cooch gurt bunfires mek.

Th’ buds *did* sprout, an’ green unvold,  
But now, th’ leaves a-tinged wi’ gold,  
In ev’ry breeze ez blow’d away;  
An’ we, like they, shall zoon decay.  
Gurt plums an’ pears, all ripe an’ good,  
    Be thick agen th’ wall,  
An’ blackberries ’pon brim’les hangs,  
    An’ nitts da slip brown shawl,\*

---

\* Are brown, and slip from their shells.

While spring'd up siddent dru th' night,  
In sheep-eyte fiel's, ez mushrums white.

All han's in archit busy be,  
A-polling apples off th' tree,  
An' in th' wringhouze,\* hard ta work,  
Th' mill da grind, th' press da quirk;  
An' fat an jolly, pleyz'd an proud,  
Th' farmer, zmilin' kine,  
Da laff an' joke an' help ez meyn  
Ta mek th' "Deb'nshir wine"—†  
A-thinkin' when, wi' pipe an' jug,  
He'll zit 'n ez chim'ly carner snug.

Th' zun *was* hot, but now begins  
Th' chilly air that AUTUMN brings;  
The days da sharten as they vlies,  
An' vogs da thick in eyv'nings rise.  
Zo zummer-loving zwallers now,  
In vlocks ta vlee away,  
Da mit together zoon ta start  
Ver lan's athurt th' sey  
May we, when life's dark starms da come,  
Zo vind a new an' brighter home!

---

\* The place in which cider is made.

† Cider.

Th' sportsman now es all agog,  
 An' up betimes ee off da jog,  
 Wi' pwointer an' two-barryell'd gun,  
 An' 'mong th' geām gits famious fun.  
 Th' houn's goos out an' hun'smeyn smart  
     The'r curd'ly harns da blow,  
 While chasing sharp th' hare an' fox  
     An' roarin' "tally ho!"  
 But dash that break-neck work, zes I,  
 Let's hev th' vishin'-rod an' vly!

An' bother'd to a stake,\* my boys,  
 There's nothin' else got half sitch joys;  
 An' Autumn's seys'n spoort da bring  
 A-maust za good as 'tis in Spring.  
 Th' vloods da car vur up th' stream  
     Gurt peyle an' sammon too,  
 An' zum ta hook, an' p'raps ta land,  
     'Tis pausable ta do.  
 But zoon we'll stap a-ketchin' trout,  
 Ver they ta spāān now zits about.

"The Autumn-fishing vies with that of Spring, and in rivers which are frequented by salmon and salmon-peal, it is, in some respects, even superior to it. The trout are fat and vigorous after their summer feeding, and in favourable weather they are, throughout the day, generally eager in pursuit of food."—*Vade Mecum of Fly Fishing for Trout, Published by Longman & Co.*

---

\* An expression corrupted, probably, from that of "burned to a stake" of the by-gone days of sectarian persecution.

A COCKNEY'S VISIT TO THE COUNTRY;  
OR, PRESUMPTION PUNISHED.

---

A "MORAL" TALE.

---

'Bout zix er zebb'n year agoo  
A Lunnen chap com'd down,  
Away vrem smoke an' dist, ta tek  
Zum lodgins in our town.

Zum zed ee was a wold Lard's son,  
An' talk'd how urch ee *ood* be,  
While other's sim'd ta zay ee was  
No bedder than ee shood be.

But duke er ditchess, good er bad,  
Ta *others* 'twas no matter,  
Tho' magpie fools can't nivver help  
'Bout other voke ta chatter.

Ev coose ee dress'd most mortal smart,  
An' had on jewyels bright,  
An' smok'd cigars as dru th' streytes  
Ee'd zwagger bolt upright.

An' darn gurt whiskers, too, ee had,  
 An' roun' es lips mustachins,  
 An' hair lik' poun's o' can'les show'd  
 Ee stiddid wull th' fashins.

An' theyze yer chap (a clivver dog!)  
 Know'd everythin', ev coose,—  
 Ked dance, an' drāā, an' reyde, an' write,  
 An' summy like th' deuce.

An' as ta spoorting—bless yer soul!—  
 Ee know'd a 'mazin' lot—  
 Ked ride, an' hunt, an' vish, an' shut,\*  
 An' a 'stiffiket † ee'd got.

An' zo zumtimes, in vrost an' snow,  
 All tiddivated up,  
 Ee'd zwagger off wi' gun an' dog,—  
 A mongrel, half-starv'd pup.

An' p'raps ee'd shut zum sparras, er  
 Zum rabbins, er zum stares;  
 An' zware ee'd kill'd a sight o' cocks, ‡  
 Er pā'driges, er hares.

---

\* Shoot.

† Certificate.

‡ Woodcocks.



But most voke didn' eyvn think,  
 That *they* ee'd shut, ez-zull,  
 Zo siv'rel chaps agreed ta watch  
 An' zee wur \* lies ee'd tull.

One day, as ushal, out ee went,  
 An' two 'r dree furns an' I  
 Did āā'der'n strake, an' hidy close,  
 Th' doings o'n ta spy.

We zeed en load. Th' g'n vull cock'd  
 Ee fu'st ram'd down th' shot,  
 An' then th' powder tap o' that :  
 Th' waddin' ee'd vergot.

Ee *did* putt on a cap, an' then  
 Let down th' cock all saff,  
 An' on ee walk'd—th' gun held out  
 Arm's length, a yard an' half.

Lor', how afeer'd th' feller look'd !  
 An' wuss, jist āāder, var,  
 Ver dree yards off a cuddy-wran  
 Was pitch'd 'pon tap 've a bar.

---

\* Whether.

Up goos th' gun, an' snap th' cock :—

But there th' feller bide ;

Zo auver hedge I gid a spring,\*

An' walk'd up to ez zide.

“Dear me,” zes ee, “there *was* a shot,

D'ee zee theck 'oodcock vall ?”

“Why no,” zes I, “ner you, I count—

You did n' fire at all.

A pirty spoortsman, you, to load

'n th' way that you've a-done ;

I'll zit ee straight if you,” zes I,

“Ell let me hev yer gun.”

“Ev coose,” zes ee, “*you* pleyze ta shut,

I don't veel vurry well,”

“O no,” zes I, “I'll cure ee, sir,

Ver you shall shut yerzull.”

I took'd th' gun, an' drāād th' charge,

An' loaded 'en all right ;

A double charge I smuggled in,

An' ram'd it down all tight.

---

\* “Gid a Spring.”—Sprang over.

I hand\* en back, an' th' chap did try,  
 Wi' miny an excuse,  
 Ta shuffle off away vrem I,  
 But vound 'twas all no use.

A chim-chāā story up ee twold .  
 'Bout dānger that appear'd ;  
 Till at et loud I laugh'd, an' zed  
 That kowards was afeerd.

Then in a rage th' feller got,  
 An' ax'd me what I meynd ;  
 An zed that all ez sim'ly fear  
 Had only bin purteynd.

“Ev coose not, sir,” zes I, “zo now,  
 Ta sāāve ee vurder trouble,  
 Look dru th' hedge, you'll zee zum birds  
 A-veedin' in th' stubble.”

Ee zward ee zeed 'em (māācy wull,  
 'Twas nothin' but a clat !)  
 He cock'd ez gun, an' kneelid down,  
 An' off ee drow'd ez hat.

An' then ee level'd dru th' hedge,  
 An' sim'd in sitch a vlurry!  
 An' close I watch'd, ver I know'd ee  
 Ta shut off 'oodn hurry.

I zeed that bwoth ez eyes was vast,  
 An' th' gun did pwoint askew,  
 But he purteynd 'was alwiz long  
 A-stiddin' what to do.

"If dissn' fire" zes I, "they'll rise."  
 "I will 'n a minute," zes ee,  
 "Mek haste," zes I. "Wull there, then"—bang!  
 An' backward lied was ee.

A roaring yelp com'd auver hedge,  
 An' then a dismal groan,  
 Zo in I look'd an' there th' *dog*  
 Was stratch'd out dead 's a stone.

Th' chap ee "murder" loud did ball,  
 (But vast ez eyes did stay:)  
 "'s th' smoke a-gone," ee groanid out,  
 "Pleyse tek th' gun away."

"Iss, iss," zes I, "cheer up, my lad."  
 "I dies," ee zes, "O dear!  
 My heyde hurn's roun', my shoulder's off;"  
 ("O no," zes I, "ee's here.")

“ An’ all th’ birds be het ta rags,”  
 Zes ee, “ I yird ’em cry,—  
 But let em’ bide—come home.” “ Why, sir,  
 You’ve kill’d yer dog,” zes I.

An’ out I drow’d ’n to his veet.  
 Lor’ how th’ feller stared!  
 An’ that ee’d nivver shut no moore,  
 A solemn woath he zwared.

Ee bag’d me that I ’ood n’ tull  
 ’Bout nothin’ that I’d zeed,  
 An’ as I’d had a famious lark  
 Ev coose I zoon agreed.

Jist then th’ furns I’d left behine,  
 Who know’d all what took place,  
 Com’d up an’ mortified th’ chap  
 By laughing in ez face.

Nex’ day ’twas spread all auver town,  
 An’ vokes enjoyed th’ fun,  
 But close in doors th’ feller kip’d,  
 An’ zoon got rid ’ve ez gun.

Th’ days vlied on—th’ wicks—th’ months,  
 An’ wenter pass’d away,  
 An’ cheerful spring agen com’ roun’,  
 An’ trouts begun ta play,

An' rods an' tackle out was brought,  
 An voke begun ta vish,  
 An' Mister Cockney—our wold furnd—  
 Ta jine in et did wish.

Zo rod, an' line, an' vlies ee bote,  
 An' out ee zwagger'd bold,  
 An' sitch th' capers ee did cut  
 'Twas glorious ta behold.

Ee'd clinch th' rod, an', win'mill-like,  
 Th' arms o'n round ee'd drow,  
 An' cock ez lig, an' beynd ez back,  
 An' ruckey down quite low.

Zo gammikin 'pon gurt high banks  
 Ee'd often auver-tap,  
 An' in a deep an' vrothy pool  
 E'd tum'le neck an' crap;

An' scram'le out as best ee cood;  
 An' in ez wull-zoak'd dress  
 Ee'd zwagger home, th' buoys all roun'  
 A-laughing at th' mess.

Ee'd freykent break ez rod, an' 's line  
 Ed ev'ry minute hetch,  
 Bnt nivver once a single vish  
 Did theck there feller catch.

But was zo laugh'd at that he zoon  
 Did tackle back ta Lunnun,  
 An' much oblig'd ee auft t've bin  
 Ver th' good that we'd a-done 'n.

We'd teych'd en what a ign'rant thing  
 's conceyte an' foolish pride,  
 T'appear 'mong strangers auver-wise  
 When wi 'em ee did bide.

Purteynding everythin' ta know,  
 Wi'out a bit o' larnin',  
 Ez sure 'n th' eynd sar'd out ta be,—  
 Zo, reyder, *you* tek wārning.

The Hero of this story is of course a purely fictitious personage, an *individual* burlesque being by no means meant. There is a *class* in the "sporting world," however, of which "Mister Cockney" will perhaps be recognized as a specimen.



## ANGLING COMPARED WITH HUNTING AND SHOOTING.

“The Angler, at leest, hath his holsom walke mery at his ease, and a swete ayre of the swete savoure of the meade floures that makyth him hungry. Hee heareth the melodyous armony of fowles—hee seeth the yonge swannes, heerons, duckes, cootes, and many other fowles, wyth their broodes, whych to me seemeth better than all the noyse of houndys, the blaste of hornes, and the serye of fowles, that hunters, hawkeners, and fowlers can make, And if the Angler take fysshe, surely thenne is there no man merrier than hee is in his spirytes.” BOOK OF ST. ALBANS.

Let other people pleyze therzulls,  
 An' do as they da wish,—  
 Hunt, er shut, er ride, er coose,—  
 But I ed zoonder vish.  
 Ver in th' marnin' I da up  
 Za rathe as break o' day,  
 An' wi' my vishing rod an' traps,  
 Off I da sãil away.

An' fust-along I tries th' worm,  
 'Till teyn o'clock, or past,  
 An' then I staps that sart o' fun,  
 When vlies da come on vast.  
 But 'vore I putts my collar on  
 I gits 'pon tap 've a bar,  
 An' teks a snack o' bread an' cheese  
 That I da mind an' car.

Then p'r'aps I hears a gun goo off,  
 That meks me stare about ;  
 Er else me-ap I zeesh th' houn's,  
 Ver they be often out.  
 An' then I fancies which ez best  
 O' they dree sarts o' fun,—  
 Th' rod-an'-line, th' hoss an' houn's,  
 Er else th' dog an' gun.

O, let's hev vishin'—that's th' spoort  
 Ta plizure an' ta charm ;  
 A gun mid *do*, but you must risk  
 Th' shuttin' off yer arm.  
 But as ver hosses an' ver houn's,  
 I zes—o'd darn et all ;—  
 Ver deuce a hoss I ever mounts  
 But off be sure ta vall.

A statement which the following "Sketch" will sufficiently illustrate.

The "Boke of St. Albans," which has furnished the motto to the foregoing verses, is remarkable as containing the first treatise on angling that was ever printed ; and what adds to its singularity is the circumstance of its being the production of a lady—Dame Juliana Berners, by name. This lady was prioress of the nunnery of St. Sopwell, in Hertfordshire, and one of the most learned and accomplished women of her time. The "Boke of St. Albans" was "emprinted" at Westminster, in 1496, by the famous Wynkin de Worde, the assistant and friend of Caxton. It contained treatises on "Hawkyng and Huntynge," in verse, a treatise on the method of "Blazyng of Armes," and the "Treatyse of Fysshynge with an Angle" before referred to.

## EQUESTRIANSHIP.

“ His horse, who never in that sort  
 Had handled been before,  
 What thing upon his back had got  
 Did wonder more and more ;  
 So like an arrow swift he flew,  
 Shot by an archer strong,” &c. &c.

COWPER'S “ *John Gilpin*.”

I stap'd ta zee th' houn's, one day,  
 That come'd a-huntin' on theck way,  
 An' wi' 'em there was hurd-kwote chaps,\*  
 Wi' boots an' birches, roun'-crown caps,  
 An' gurt long whips that they did smack,  
 Stick'd up 'pon hosses grey an' black,  
 That snorted, rar'd, an' scouced about—  
 An' all th' chaps kip'd holl'ring out,  
 An' beyte th' heydge, ta start th' hare,  
 If chance that arry one was there.

I walk'd zum time huom by their side,  
 'Till one th' chaps ax'd I ta ride.  
 I hates a hoss, ver I've bin drow'd  
 Vrem all that ever I've a-rode ;  
 An' zo I zes, “ sir, I shall vall,  
 Ver your's ez nātion seyzyd tall ;

---

\* *Red coat chaps*,—gentlemen in the costume of the hunt.

Bezides, my vishin' clothes bant fit  
 'Pon sitch a hoss as yours ta git."  
 (A fine one 'twas, most deucid skittish,  
 Wi glossy kwote, in color whittish,—  
 A mane an' tääil wull trim'd an' vlowing,  
 Wi' ears a-peäked an' nostrils blowing;  
 A zwan-arch'd neck, an' chist za broad  
 That like a greyhoun' he was graw'd;  
 Long slinder ligs an' vetlocks fine;—  
 In shart was thurra-bred ver gwine.)

Zes ee, "Pshaw! *do.*" Zes I, "I can't."  
 Zes ee, "Be bagger'd if you shan't."  
 Zes I, "I nivvèr rode a mile."  
 Then all th' ginnelmeyn did zmile,  
 An' didn' sim ta kear a fig,  
 Za long as they ked hev a rig.  
 Lor! how I shek'd! But 'twas no good,—  
 Ee zed ee'd walk, an' ride I shood.

I zeed th' hoss stood pirty quiet,  
 An' zo, ta last, I zed I'd try et.  
 I went ta mount, and gid a stride,  
 But all zing'd out—"That's not th' zide!"  
 An' then they laugh'd, an' almost bust,  
 Ta zee me putt th' wrong lig fust;  
 But when I got 'pon tap th' thing  
 They zed I zot en like a king.

Mÿ heyde hurn'd roun' when down I look'd ;  
 Thought I, be darn'd if I bant book'd.  
 "How do ee hold th' rayns ?" zes I.  
 But then th' dogs did yelp an' cry,  
 An' vore I yird what they did zay,  
 By gar my hoss was hurn'd away.  
 Th' houn's, you zee, had vound a hare,  
 An' āāder'n, like th' Turk, did tare.  
 I hollar'd "waa! wogg off! stan' still!"  
 But on he gallop'd up th' hill.

I zeed th' bridle was no good,  
 Zo I grigg'd th' zaddle tight's I cood,  
 An' squeez'd my ligs wi' all my might ;  
 Zo there was I stick'd bolt upright.  
 But lor ! I jerk'd zo up an' down,  
 I thaut 'twas best ta hug en roun'  
 Th' neck. I did, but shek'd ver vear  
 Because a heydge was coming near.

Now t'other chaps was var behind,  
 Ver my hoss vloed on like th' wind.  
 But I yird 'em laugh za loud at that,  
 An' louder when off vall'd my hat !  
 My hair blow'd back, an' sure enough  
 How I did quirk, an' blow, an' puff !

Th' heydge I zeed was high an' wide,  
An' had a mud-pon' t'other zide.  
Th' hoss 'com'd up—ee made a jump,  
An' het my heyde agen a stump;  
I hollar'd out, an tighter cling'd,  
But 'twas no good—off I was fling'd,  
An' pitch'd right in th' muddy zlough,  
An' there I vlounder'd like a zow,  
An' ramm'l'd out I dun-no\* how!

---

\* Don't know.



## WINTER.

“ See Winter comes to rule the varied year,  
Sullen and sad, with all his rising train—  
Vapours, and clouds, and storms.  
Be these my theme.” THOMPSON.

Storms an’ tempests, frost an’ snow,  
No’thern winds that keenly blow,  
Speyke wenter’s come, all dread an’ drear,  
Th’ death an’ burial o’ th’ year.  
Vanish’d zong-birds, vanish’d flowers,  
Vanish’d zummer’s leaf-geeen bowers,—  
Gone,—but dreariness remāins,  
Ver natur’s bound in wenter’s chāins !

Leafless trees, an’ heydges bare,  
Frost-bit grass zeed ev’rywhere ;  
All *stock* an’ cattle took’d away \*  
An’ kip’d atwum † ’pon strow an’ hay.  
Stares, an’ villvares, ‡ snipes an’ cocks,  
An’ vrom th’ no’th gurt weeld-vowl vlocks,  
Da vlee about half starv’d an’ tame,  
An’ hares an’ rabbits be th’ same.

---

\* Removed from the fields.

† At home.

‡ Starlings and field fares.



Cringerankum ice th' winders trace,  
 An' clinkerbells\* hangs ev'ry place ;  
 Chaps hurnin' dru th' vallin' snow  
 Da beāt the'r han's an' the'r vingers blow.  
 Shart dumpsy days an' longful nights ;—  
 But moon an' stars, an' no'thern lights  
 Da dreyve away th' seys'n's gloom  
 An' mek th' night za clear as noon.

Buoys a-zlidin' hāās the'r fun,  
 An' spoortsmen the'r's wi' dog an' gun,  
 Zo tho' th' wenter dismal be,  
 Da pass away quite merrily.  
 Ashen fackots cracklin' bright,  
 An' kursmas can'les all a-light,  
 In doors da cheer us while we meet  
 Our neighbour furns in parties zweet.

Fiddles squeeks an' up we stan's,  
 Shekkin' ligs an' crossin' han's ;  
 While buoys tā pāy the'r farfit doom  
 Da kiss th' māidens roun' th' room.  
 Mummers, dress'd all smart an' gay,  
 Da come ta ac' the'r cursmas play ;  
 An' zingin' carols roun' th' door  
 In dead o' night 's th' church 's core.†

---

\* Icicles.

† Choir.

Pipes an' backey, tekkin' snuff;  
 Dree kird loo an' bline man's buff;—  
 Th' wold plays one, th' youngsters t'other,  
 All mighty pleyz'd wi' one another.  
 Trouts vrem spāwnin' lank an' zick,  
 While on the'r bodies zuggs\* da stick ;—  
 This, wi' th' coold,—a-goodish reys'n,—  
 Staps vishin' till a milder seys'n.

In the west of England—particularly in Devonshire—the custom of burning an “Ashen Fagot” on Christmas eve, and the merry-making attendant thereon, have existed from time immemorial. The capacious and comfortable “chimney corner” in the kitchen of all the old farm houses, is admirably adapted for the purpose. The faggot of green ash is bound together with several bramble bands, and on the bursting of each of these bands, an immense jug of cider is emptied by the assembled party. Singing, dancing, and Christmas games are not forgotten, while the tables groan with the weight of good things which the hospitable host provides for his welcome guests. But this good old custom is fast fading away before the advance of the more “genteel” and “fashionable” amusements of an age the superiority of which over the past is more than questionable, notwithstanding the cant which is so everlastingly talked about it. In some retired parts of the country, however, the custom is still kept up with almost its pristine spirit—the “mummers,” also, are still to be found—and the “church’s core,” still ushers in ‘the auspicious morn’ of Christmas day with musical performances in the open air.

---

\* The trout-louse (*lernea trutta*) called the *sugg* by Walton and the older anglers.

## CURSMAS.

Wold Gramfather Cursmas once moore's com'd along,  
 An' ee's welcome as welcome can be;  
 Zo I'll rub up my wits an' I'll hatch up a zong,  
 Ver a famous wold feller ez he.

Tho' he comes in th' vrost, an' in weather za weeld,  
 An' tho' clinkerbells roun' 'en da drap,  
 Can ee show me th' heart of man, umman, or cheeld,  
 That don't *warm* at the jolly wold chap.

Oh! he brings to our mind th' wold times a-gone pas',  
 An' th' fun that we used ta hev then;  
 An' th' most vergot faces ev lad an' ev lass  
 Da come fresh in our mim'ries agen.

We da sim we be zot roun' th' hea'th, as we did  
 In theck whome we da love za well now,—  
 That we dances an' zings—that we rompse as we mid  
 'Neath th' mischievous mistletoe bough.

An' *one face* ez ther there that beyend all th' rest  
 Sims ta hānt us where'er we da goo,  
 Ver ev theck was our day-dreymes—th' brightest, the best,  
 Tho' they ended like dreymes always do.

Oh! 'tis painful ta think o' th' plizures that's gone—  
 O' th' furns that we lov'd an' lov'd we;—  
 Tho' we'll nivver complāin, but believe that what's done  
 Hev bin arder'd th' best that could be.

Iss! let's rather look vorrad, an' try, as we shood,  
 To be wiser an' bedder each day,—  
 To be less ver ourzells—to do *others* moore good—  
 An' I'm sure if we *will* that we *may*.

Then while Cursmas zo vinds us, an' while he da car  
 Lots o' me'th—lots o' love—in ez train, [an' var,  
 Where's th' chap—where's th' māid—that on't jine near  
 In a welcome again an' again?

Zo let's screw up th' catgut—let's shuffle th' pack—  
 Ev'ry kear drow azide ver a while;  
 Like we used ta do once, let each Jwoan hāā her Jack,  
 An' we'll kip up wold Cursmas in style.

## TH' WOLD STWONIN' BURGE.\*

"But this charming valley, I regret to say, has lost one of its best ornaments. That magnificent old ivy-clad bridge, which for picturesqueness and strength was unrivalled in the locality, has been demolished, and the flimsy thing before us occupies its site."

"THE AXE"—a *MS. Sketch*.

Up high an' grand athurt th' stream,  
 Th' fine wold stwonin' burge did ream,  
     All cling'd wi' ivy tight,—  
 A-rar'd up strong 'pon buttress stout  
 That vrom ez zides var zittid out,  
     Ta kip en firm upright.

Th' road that auver'n used ta goo  
 Was steep's a roof, an' narry too—  
     'Cause make in pack-hoss day;  
 Wi' nooks left in th' par'pat high,  
 Ver chaps, when teams o'm gallop'd by,  
     Ta stan' in out th' way.

A hunder'd vloods th' burdge had stood  
 That zum ev stwone an' moore ev 'ood  
     Had hurt er wash'd away;—  
 Ee'd look when fields was var an' wide,  
 In wenter, deep in wauder lied,  
     Lik' a rock vur out ta sey.

---

\* Bridge—often pronounced *brudge*.

An' jist za strong ! Ee stood za sturth,  
As thof grow'd out th' solid earth—

A mountain'd zoonder vall ;  
An' dru \* th' boddam,† var an' near,  
'Twas look'd at as a pictur dear,  
But vrownin'-grey wi'-all.

Ez builders now be quite vergot,  
Ver years agoo the'r buones did rot—  
We martals zoon decay !  
Th' work we meks, wi' 'genious han's,  
When we be dead as tumstwones stan's,  
But *they*, too, mould away.

Ver where's th' burdge? Down, every bit!  
They zed that ee was on'y fit  
Ver pack-hosses, now coaches vlit,  
An' steam's a-used instid :  
A ire ‡ thing, moore smart by half,  
That zeed var off's za theene's a laff,§  
An' zum zes edden || 'xac'ly saff,¶  
Stan's in th' place ee did.

---

\* Through.

† Iron.

|| Is not.

† Valley.

§ Lath.

¶ Safe.

## VAREWELL TO THE AXE.

Written on the occasion of the Writer's changing his residence  
from Axminster, November 10, 1848.

Varewell to thee, river, thou stream o' my heart,—  
Varewell!—ver in zadness vrem thee do I part;  
How I've know'd an' ev loved thee no language can tell,  
Ner describe what I veel as I bid thee varewell.

Lik' a valued wold furnd hast thou e'er bin to me,  
Ver my joys an' my griefs ev bin witness'd by thee;  
Thou'st a-murmur'd a dirge when my zorras had birth,  
An' thy stickles ev danced to my light-hearted mirth.

Vrem a cheeld ev I liv'd 'pon thy kowslip-spread banks,  
An' ev played in thy mee-ads my half-hollerday pranks;  
In th' zummer I've bathed in thy cool crystal tides,  
An' when ice glazed thee o'er ev ketched yeat 'pon thy zslides.

As th' years roll'd along how my trail on thy strand  
Ked be traced var an' near, when, wi' vly-rod in hand,  
I'd all kear drow azide an' devote my spare hours  
To th' music ev birds an' th' scent ev th' vlowers!

Oh! river, wi' thee ev bin ever entwined  
 All th' love o' my kindred—th' love o' my kind ;  
 An' if anything *good* in my heart had a place  
 I could link it wi' thee and thy influence trace.

Well then can it be weykness that leads me to grieve  
 O'er th' Fate that compels me thy lov'd banks to leave,—  
 That, as time da vly on, the moore strongly endears  
 All that's mix'd wi' my brightest an' happiest years !—

That by day meks me think, an' by night meks me dream  
 O' th' wull be-know'd spots in thy valley an' stream ;  
 An' in fancy sa vivid live over once more  
 Th' delights an' th' plizures I've had there bevore !—

That da tull me, in age (should my life last till then)  
 How I'll drag my stiff limbs to thy dear zide agen ;  
 An' th' scenes o' my youth to my thoughts gi'e the'r wing,  
 An' improve by th' lessins reflection shall bring !

As I love thee in life zo I'll love thee in death,  
 An' my last wish shall be, wi' my vast v'leeting breath,—  
 “ Lay my buones 'pon the bank that thy dear waters lave,  
 'Mong th' turf let th' daisies an' gulticups wave,  
 An' thy murmurs be requiems over my grave ! ”



## AN ANGLER'S DEATH-SCENE.

“ And when he quits his humble heritage  
 It is with no wild strain—no violence ;  
 But, wafted by a comely angel's breath,  
 He glides from Time, and, on immortal sails,  
 Weareth the rich dawn of Eternity.”

STODDART.

Not a zound in th' zick man's room ked\* I hear,  
 Sips † ez pankin' an' faintly groanin',  
 An' th' sobs ev ez wive, an' her vast-vallin' tear,  
 An' ez childern disconsolate moanin'.

I stood by th' bed-zide, an' mournvully look'd  
 'Pon th' face that I last zeed za cheerly,  
 Now holler an' pale, that spoke plain ee'd be took'd  
 Vrem th' furns that did love 'en za dearly.

An' away vlied my thoughts to th' days when we stroll'd  
 Wi' th' rod by our favorite stream—  
 An' th' years sim'd but yes'day—za zwift had they roll'd—  
 An' th' whole sim'd as thof 'twas a dream.

He murmur'd my name, as I took es coold hand,  
 An' ee whisper'd (while glaz'd wiz ez eye)—

---

\* Could.

† Except.

“I da leyve thēase bad worl’ an’ da mount ta th’ land  
That’s all beauteous an’ bright in th’ sky.”

No wāight ’pon es conscience had he ta tarment ’en,  
Ez life had bin simple an’ lone ;  
An’ kine furns an’ true ee ed lef ta lament en,  
An carry an’ voller en *home*.

Var away vrem th’ city ee’d pass’d all ez hours,  
Conteynt, th’ best fortin, injoyin’ ;  
In peyce an’ in quiet, ’mongst fiel’s an’ the’r flowers,  
Th’ angle ez lishure imployin’.

Ee gid me ez rods—an’ a blessing ee breath’d—  
Ta kip ver ez sake an’ ta mine en ;  
But ez “chattles an’ goods ” in ez *will* ee’d a leyv’d  
Ta th’ widder remaynin behine en.

Resign’d an’ prepar’d for a infinite life,  
In a soft but deep prayer ee lied ;  
Then kiss’d all ez children, an’ hugg’d ez sad wife,  
An’ shut vast ez eyes—AN’ EE DIED !

READER,—“MAY THY LAST END BE LIKE HIS.”



## GLOSSARY.

---

Aader, after.

Aërly, early.

Afëard, afraid.

Agen, (Anglo-saxon,) against.

Agoo, ago.

Alwiz, always.

Anan? or 'nan? Synonymous with "what do you say?"

Angle-dog, a worm for fishing.

Archit, orchard.

Ar-a-one, a contraction of "e'er a one."

Askew, crooked.

At, synonymous with "contend with"—as "I'll *at* you in a game."

A'th, earth.

Athurt, (athwart,) across.

Auft, ought.

Auver, over.

Auverright, opposite.

Avore, before.

Ax, ask—from the Anglo-saxon *Axian*.

Backey, tobacco.

Ballyrag, Anglo-saxon, to abuse.

Banging, large.

Ban't, be not.

Bastic, basket.

Bats, half boots.

Bay, to pond back a running stream.

Bëast, cattle.

Beedlehead, the miller's thumb.

Bin, been.

Binnon, suppose.

Bird-batting, the catching of birds by night with a net and lights.

Bline-buckey-Davy, Blind man's buff.

Blowth, blossom.

Boddom, valley.

Boit, bait.

Boot, as "to gi'e to boot"—from the Anglo-saxon *bot*;—that is, to give something extra in an unequal exchange of two articles.

Bother, to worry, to perplex.

Bother'd to a stake, an expression corrupted, perhaps, from "burnt to a stake."

Break, to fail in business.

Brektus, breakfast.

Brim'le, bramble.

Bullick, applied both to male and female kine.

Bumbaily, a bound bailiff.

Bum-by, by and by.

Burdge, bridge.

Bush, to toss as a cow does.

By gor, gar, or gad, common expressions of obvious etymology.

Calling huome, the publishing of banns of marriage.

Cappical, capital, excellent.

Car, to carry.

Cas', can. "Cas' goo if ee 'ool."

Cass'n, cannot.

Chap, a person.

Charm, a noise, or confusion. "What a *charm* o' children!" From the Anglo-saxon *cyrm*.

Cheese, the pulp of apples prepared for the cider press.

Chilver, a ewe lamb.

Chim-chaw, tedious, prosy.

Chop, to make an exchange.

Chuck, choke—also a call for pigs.

Clatting, bobbing for eels.

Clāvel, a mantel-piece. A house among the hills between Honiton and Taunton bears the name of "Ho'min Clāvel," from the circumstance of its having a mantel-piece made of holly.

Clim, to climb.

Clinkerbell, an icicle.

Clout, a blow with the hand.

Colt, a novitiate. "You be a *colt*, and must pay yer vooting."

Come, to be ripe. "Theäse apple's too much *come*."

Cooch, field weeds.

Combe, a little valley opening into a larger one.

Coos, could—"Coos a-done it well enough."

Coosish, rather course.

Cowart, coward.

Creyle, creel.

Cringcrankum, twisted, flourished.

Cripse, crisp.

Croud, from the Welch *Crwth*, a fiddle.

Cutt, the wren.

Da, do.

Dabster, a proficient.

Disn', do not.

Dought, to extinguish a fire.

Downarg, to debate obstinately and offensively.

Drash, to thrash.

Dread, thread.

Dree, three.

Dretten, to threaten.

Dring, to squeeze in a crowd. "Māācy, dont ee *dringy* so."

Drink. To drink together is the surest proof of rustic friendship. It is almost an insult to refuse.

Drow, to throw.

- Dru, through.
- Drub, to beat with a stick or the fists.
- Drush, the thrush.
- Dum'l'dore, the humble bee.
- Dump, blunt.
- Dumpy, short in stature.
- Dumpsy, inclined to be dark.
- Dun-no, don't know.
- Durns, the side posts of a door.
- 'E, ee, he, and sometimes you, it, &c.
- Ed, would.
- Eddn', is not.
- Elbowgrease, manual labour.
- Elt, a young female pig.
- Eldrot, Anglo-saxon *eald*, and root, the wild parsley.
- 'En, 'n, on, Anglo-saxon *hyn*. "Ketch'n, Jack."
- Er, or.
- Es, ez, is, or his.
- Ev, of.
- Ev'ry bit and crumb, totally, entirely. "Theäse is every  
bit and crumb za good as theck."
- Eyte, eat, ate.
- Feller, fellow.
- Fine-rod-voke, "*gentlemen*"—anglers, fops, whom the  
rustic holds in deserved contempt.
- Flannin', flannel.
- Furnd, friend.



Furrells, (forrils,) the covers of a book.

Fust, first.

Gad (goad,) a stout stick.

Gangag'ous, mindful of, "I've bin moore gangag'ous o' my mouth than I have o' religion," was the expression of a person who had stayed home from church to eat fruit.

Gammykin, "attitudinizing."

Geäm, game.

Gee, gie, *give*; gid, *gave*.

Git, get.

Godymighty's-cow, the ladybird.

Goodlivier, (good liver,) one who has extensive house-keeping.

Gookoo the Cuckoo.

Gramfer, grandfather.

Grammer, (from the Norman-French, Grandmère,) grandmother,

Gookoo-spattle, the frothy nidus of the *Cicada spumaria*, attributed to the spitting of the cuckoo.—*Barns*.

Gravelling, the salmon fry.

Grigg, to squeeze.

Grub, the crab apple.

Guinea. "The rustic always bets *a guinea*."

Gully, a water-course.

Gulticup, the buttercup,—*ranunculus bulbosus*.

Gumshun, common sense.

Gurn, grin.

Gurt, great.

Gurdled, griddled, A "gurdled cake" is the rustic's dainty.

Guss, a girth; also, to tighten extremely. "Thee 't bu'st if 's *guss* thy zel up zo."

Gwine, going.

Gwains on, proceedings "Pery gwains on, these, b'ant em."

Haa, hev, 'ev. (Anglo saxon *ah*) *have*.

Hag, a kind of demoniacal fairy, supposed to possess supernatural power over horses and other animals.

Halter-path, a horse road.

Hāāves, (Haws,) thorn berries. Used as a term of comparison when speaking of numbers, as "th' vish be za thick as hāāves."

Hames, part of the collar of a draught horse.

Handy, useful. "He's a smart *handy* feller enough."

Han't, have not, or has not.

Hang-gallis, fit for the gallows. "A hang gallis dog!"

Hansel. Success with the first use of a new implement, as, "to hansel a rod," means to catch fish with it the first time of using—considered to be indicative of future luck.

Hart, the haft of a knife.

Hatch, (Anglo-saxon *Hæca*,) a little gate. Also the principal door of a church.

Henge, the liver, *lights* (lungs,) and heart of a calf or sheep.

Hobble, a difficulty.

Hog, a one year-old sheep.

Hold-wi', to agree with.

Home, "going home," *dying*. "Poor old Sam ez *gwine* home."

Holm, holly.

Hoss, horse.

Hoss-stinger, the dragon fly.

Hunk, a large slice.

Hurd, red.

Hursh, to rush.

Husbird, from *wo*, Anglo-saxon, *evil*, and bird—a bird of evil. Applied to persons.

Huz'if, a house wife.

Innion, onion.

Ire, i'er, iron.

Iss, from the Anglo-saxon *gese*, *yes*.

Itt, yet. "Not itt," not yet.

Jack-in-the-wad, the *ignis fatuus*.

Janders, the jaundice.

Jup, or g'up, a contraction, probably, of gee-up, *go on*—applied to cows.

Kear, care.

Kecker, the windpipe.

Ked, could.

Kag, a small barrel. From the French *caque*—a root sufficiently familiar to our smugglers on the coast.

Kill-devil, a kind of artificial minnow.

Kim-āā-th'-wāā, (come here this way,) applied to horses when they are required to keep to the left.

Kird, card.

Knap, a little hill or eminence.

Knotlings, the entrails of a pig.

Kore, choir.

Kursmas, christmas.

Laberly, wet weather. Used chiefly in Somersetshire, where there is a saying that: "a labberly May makes a good crop of hay."

Lady-wash-dish, the *wag tail*.

Lake, a brook.

Lef, leave. "I on't lef 'en, sure."

Lease or leyze, from the Anglo-saxon, *lesan*, to glean.

Learse, (Anglo-saxon *læs*,) pasture land.

Lebb'n, eleven.

Leer, leary, empty in the stomach, almost faint with hunger.

Lents, loan. "I'll gi'e ee th' *lent's* o'n ver a week."

Lew, Anglo-saxon *Hleow*, sheltered.

Limber, pliable.

Lippits, rags.

Look sharp, be quick.

Lop, to walk lazily, also loosely built,—applied to an individual. "He's a gurt lopping feller."

Lovechile, an illegitimate child.

Lumper, to stumble.

Mag, to irritate by repeated complaints. “Dont ee *maggy zo.*”

Maiden-tree, a tree not a pollard.

Maust, most.

Meäny, the minnow.

Mether, (hither,) come to me. Applied chiefly to horses.

Mid, might.

Mock, a stump or root.

Moil, to strain with labor.

Mumpheyde, a dull, stupid person.

Muv, move.

Nar, *never*,—“nar-a-one”—not one, or never-a-one.

Near, stingy.

Neet, not yet, nor yet.

Nickey-fackott, a little fagot.

Nish, tender.

Niss’le tripe, the youngest and weakest of a brood or litter.

Nit, nut, net.

Noän, none.

Nodiss, notice.

No call, no necessity for. “No call to goo nyst he, Jim.’,

Noghead, a stupid fellow.

Nort, nothing.

Nunch, lunch.

Nyst, near (Anglo-saxon *nihst*, nearest.)

O’ of.

Odds, difference. "What odds is that?"

Ollar, the alder.

Onlight, to alight from a horse or vehicle.

On't, will not.

Ood, would.

Ool, will.

Ort, anything.

Orts, waste or broken victuals. "Gi'e th' poor feller a vew *orts*."

Oush, used in driving pigs.

Pank, to pant.

Pails, railings.

Parmer, the palmer worm.

Peärt, lively. "You be za peärt as a maggot, to-day."

Peewit, the lapwing.

Peckish, hungry.

Peckis, the pickaxe.

Peyle, the salmon peal; that is, a salmon which has but once visited the sea.

Pexyword, (the *pixy's hoard*,) the few remaining apples on a tree, the crop of which has been taken in.

Pick-nit, a pic-nic.

Pickey-back, the carrying of a child on one's back.

Pinner, a child's apron.

Pinking, poorly, in delicate health.

Pitchin, a pavement of small stones.

Plim, to swell.

Plusher, the larger sticks pinned horizontally on a quick-set hedge.

Plough. In addition to the well known implement, the farm waggon and horses are often included under the general term *plough* :—"Farmer Smith got a cappical *plough* ;"—meaning that his *waggon and team* are excellent. The *plough*, properly so called, is commonly known as the *zull*, from the Anglo-saxon *syl*.

Popple, popple stuone,—a *pebble*.

Pumple-vooted, club footed.

Pur, a male lamb.

Putt, a dung cart.

Put up to, to stop at.

Put up wi', to bear patiently.

Puxy, a bog.

Quar, a quarry.

Quine, the angle stone of a wall.

Quirk, to breathe violently after exertion.

Rabbin, or rabbin-rurdick (redneck) the *robin*.

Rag, synonymous with *mag*.

Rames, remains ; a skeleton of an animal.

Rammil, (raw milk,) cheese made of unskimmed milk.

Ram-jack. "Every ram-jack o'm," meaning every single individual.

Ramshackle, rickety.

Range, (reach) a pool or deep portion of a river, used in contradistinction to *stickle*.

Rathe, early.

Ronk, rank.

Ruckey-down, to stoop.

Rung, the round of a ladder.

Sassy, saucy.

Sar, to serve, to earn. “I han’t *sar’d* a penny to-day.”

Sate, soft.

Scotch, a notch.

Scouce, to prance, to gallop.

Scram, small; also, to wither. Used in another sense  
also: “I be *scram’d* wi’ th’ could.”

Scroff, refuse, waste.

Settle, a long kitchen seat, with a high back.

Sey, sea.

Shan’t, shall not.

Sharps, shafts.

Shed, should.

Shule, a shovel.

Shut, to join or weld iron; to *shoot*.

Siddent, sudden.

Sight, great number or quantity. “There was sitch a  
sight o’ vokes.”

Sim, seem.

Sinn, son.

Sitch, such.

Sithes, chives (*allium schœnoprasum*.)

’Sips, except.



Skess, scarce.

Skimmil', skimmed milk. Also the cheese made from it.

Skittish, playful.

Skitty, the water-rail.

Skivver, a skewer.

Slack, abuse. "Let's hāā none o' yer *slack*, now."

Slat, to throw down violently. "Lor how he *slat* 'n  
down!"

Slice, a fire-pan.

Slips, young running pigs.

Slommikin, slovenly,

Slottery, wet dirty weather.

Smeech, from the Anglo-saxon *smic*, smoke, or dust.

Snacks. "To goo snacks," to share profits.

Snack, a slight meal.

Sneeche, greedy.

So's, "Well so's, (companions, friends) how gits ee on?"

Sparkid, spotted.

Sparticle, Spectacle.

Span new, quite new.

Squoil, to throw stones at birds, &c.

Stare, the starling.

Stan' to, to persist in.

Stickie, a "run," or swift part of a river. See "Range."

Stid, to study; also thoughtful, gloomy. "He's all of  
a *stid*."

Strake, a streak.

Strake, to stalk, or loiter.

Stockey, stout grown.

Stogg, to be over one's shoes in mud.

Suent, smooth ; also to appear thoughtful.

Sumple, supple.

Summy, to cipher.

Switheart, a sweetheart, or lover.

Swop, to exchange.

Tack, to engage in, (corrupted, probably, from attack,)

“ I'll hev a 'tack at et.”

Tacker, a waxed thread.

Tackle, to fight with, to accomplish. “ He tackl'd en well.”

Taffety, dainty in appetite.

Taffle, to entangle.

Taties, potatoes.

Testyment, the *New Testament*, as distinguished from the *Old Testament*, which is called invariably the Bible.

Theäs, *this*, thease, *those*.

Theck, (from the Anglo-saxon *thilk*,) that, that one.

Thof, if,

Tiddivate, to trim one's dress.

Tinniger, a small funnel.

Took-to, caught, matched.

Touse, a blow with the fist.

Tow, to entice.

Tranter, a carrier.

Tull, to tell, to talk. “He an’ I was *tulling* together.”

Turmit, a turnip.

Tussel, a struggle.

’Twaddn’. It was not.

Uppingstock, steps or a block for mounting a horse.

Urch, rich.

Vase, verse.

Valley, value.

Vilip, a violet.

Villvare, the fieldfare.

Vine-rod voke, *gentlemen* fly fishers.

Vinnid, (Anglo-saxon *finnie*,) mouldy ; and, oddly enough,  
the common term for a peevish (*foreweaned*) child.

Vippence, five pence.

Vitty, proper, correct.

Vlidd, flood.

Voke, folk,

Volly, to follow.

Vorehurner, forerunner.

Voreright, blundering, thoughtless.

Vower, four.

Vrem, from.

Vuller, fallow ground.

Var, *far* ; vurder, farther.

Vurry, very.

Vuzz, furze.

Vuzznapper, a horse bred upon a heath.

Want, a mole.

Want-knap, a mole heap.

Ward, to wade.

Warny', warrant you. "I'll warny' t'ill rāin."

Weeld, wild.

Wi', with.

Wim to winnow.

Wit, white.

Withy, a willow.

Wiz, was.

Whicker, to neigh.

Wobble, to shake.

Wog—used in driving horses to direct them to the right hand *from* the Driver, who walks on the left side.

Perhaps from the Anglo-saxon *wegan* to move.

Wold, old.

Wopper, a large one (of anything.)

Wopse, a wasp.

Woth, oath.

Wringhouse, the place in which the cider-press is erected.

Wuss, wusser, worse.

Wots, oats.

Y' you. Often used in a curious manner at the end of words, with which it appears to have no proper connection; as, "'Till wetty to-day," that is, it will rain to-day.

Yeller, yellow.

Yell, an eel.

Yer, your.

Yeat, beat. "Can ee catch yeat, ta day?" a very common mode of salutation.

Yird, heard.

Za, so.

Zāā, to saw.

Zeed, *saw*. After all, perhaps, the rustic mode of forming the past tense of the verb *to see*, as well as that of many other verbs, is, strictly speaking, correct. Verbs have become *irregular* by corruption, the legitimate mode of forming the past tense and passive participle being the addition of *d* or *ed* to the infinitive. Even *seed*, therefore, may really be more in harmony with the idiom of the language than the more refined *saw* and *seen*.

Zeeve, a sieve.

Zex, (Anglo-saxon,) a tiler's chopping instrument.

Zit 'ee gwine—"I'll zit ee gwine"—that is, I will accompany you a short distance on your journey.

Zot, sat.

Zugg, (sugg.) The *lernea trutta*, or trout-louse—a parasitical insect with which that fish is infested when out of season.

Zull, self.

Zum, some.

THE HERALDIC  
VISITATION OF WESTMORELAND,

MADE IN THE YEAR 1615,

*By SIR RICHARD ST. GEORGE, KNT.,*

NORROY KING AT ARMS.



LONDON :

JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD ST. COVENT GARDEN

MDCCLIII.



TO  
SIR ALAN EDWARD BELLINGHAM, BART.,  
*Of Castle Bellingham, Co. Louth.*

ONE OF THE REPRESENTATIVES  
OF THE  
ANCIENT WESTMORELAND FAMILY  
OF  
BELLINGHAM.

*THIS VISITATION*  
IS INSCRIBED.





## PREFATORY REMARKS.

---

SINCE so many copies of Heraldic Visitations, have become the property of the nation, and open for inspection in the British Museum, they have been consulted more than any other kind of Manuscripts, to be found in the National Collection, a striking evidence of their great value and practical utility.

It is stated by Noble, and Moule, and also by Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas, that Westmoreland was heraldically visited on three occasions, viz., in 1530, 1615, and 1664. If these dates are correct, there is no copy of either the first or third Visitations in the British Museum; but of that, said to have been made in 1615, by Sir Richard St. George, Norroy, there is a copy with numerous additions, in the Harleian Collection, No. 1435, from which the following pages are compiled.

In printing this Visitation, it is merely necessary to state the plan adopted in reducing the Pedigrees into a narrative form. The names are given as nearly as possible in the order in which they are entered, a plan only departed from for obvious reasons, when the issue of a marriage is more distinctly defined, by the several sons and daughters being mentioned as first, second, &c. although not entered in their proper order of rotation.

When the descent of a younger son has been entered, this collateral branch is given, from the mention of such younger son, and as soon as the descent is exhausted, the lineal descent is again referred to, and so on to the end of each Pedigree.

When individuals have had two or more wives, it is possible their issue may be erroneously given, as the marriages are not always mentioned as first, second, &c. Care has been taken to avoid confusion, but, perhaps, not always with success ; and in presenting this Visitation to the public it is hoped some allowances will be made, for it must be admitted, that the form in which it now appears, is by no means so desirable as the original, though for publication much less costly in its production.

The Manuscript, like all copies of Visitations, exhibits endless variations in respect to the names of families and places. An endeavour has been made to adopt one general mode of spelling the names of families, and many of the names of places are given with their modern orthography.

## PEDIGREES.

---

Bellingham . . . . .	29
Benson . . . . .	22
Bradley . . . . .	23
Brathwaite . . . . .	3
Briggs . . . . .	22
Byndlose . . . . .	1
Carus . . . . .	11
Dalston . . . . .	5
Duckett . . . . .	15
Lankaster . . . . .	41
Laybourne . . . . .	49
Laybourne of Cunswick . . . . .	19
Levens . . . . .	24
Lowther . . . . .	13
Midleton of Midleton . . . . .	16
Midleton of Kirkly Lansdale . . . . .	41
Musgrave . . . . .	5
Philipson . . . . .	47
Richmond . . . . .	40
Stockdale . . . . .	40
Thornborough . . . . .	26
Warcop . . . . .	10
Wolston . . . . .	45

## ADDITIONS TO THE CARUS FAMILY, p. 11.

A second Pedigree of this family, is entered at fol. 38, of the Manuscript, in which the first William is mentioned as Richard, and the second William as Thomas ; with these additions :

Christopher Carus, second son of the latter, m. ———  
——— ; issue,

Nicholas Carus, of Kendal, m. ——— ——— ; issue,

Katherine, d. and coheir, m. Rowland Phillipson, of Calgarth.

Robert Carus, third son of the second William, or Thomas, mentioned as the head of the Carus family, of Tredaugh, in Ireland.

The eldest son of William Carus, and Isabell Laybourne, viz., Thomas Carus, justice of the king's bench ; mentioned as of Halghton, in Lancashire, ob. 3 July, 1571. To the issue of this Thomas, the additional names of William Carus, and Isabell and Anne, twin sisters, are given ; and Mary, his daughter, is mentioned as having m. 1st, Edward Midleton, of Midleton Hall, and 2ndly, Sir Henry Kighley, of Inskip, in Lancashire.

---

## ERRATA.

- Page 5.—Arms of Dalston, *for daws' heads erased gules read sable*,  
„ 18.—Arms of Midleton, *for cross read saltire*.

# VISITATION OF WESTMORELAND,

1615.

---

## BYNDLOSE.

William Byndlose, of Hailston, in Westmoreland,  
m. ————; issue, .

Robert Byndlose, of Hailston, m. Agnes, d. of ————  
——— Harrison; issue,

Anne, m. William Fleming.

Dorothy, m. Thomas Brathwaite, of Burneshead, in  
Westmoreland.

Sir Robert Byndlose, knt., his heir.

Anne, m. Walter Jobson.

Thomas Byndlose, second son, ob. s. p.

Walter Byndlose, third son, ob. s. p.

Barnaby Byndlose, fourth son, ob. s. p.

Christopher Byndlose,\* m. Milicent, d. of Roger  
Dalton, of Lancashire; issue,

Bridget, m. Edward Midleton, of Midleton Hall,  
in Westmoreland.

---

\* Also mentioned as fourth son.

Sir Robert Byndlose, knt., m. 1st, Mary, d. of Edmund Eltoft, of Thornhill, in Yorkshire; issue,

Robert, died young.

Sir Francis Byndlose, his heir.

Dorothy, m. Charles Midleton, of Belsay, in Northumberland.

Jane, m. William Carnaby, of Northumberland.

Mary, m. ——— Holt, of Stubbley.

Sir Robert, m. 2ndly, Alice, d. and coheir of Lancelot Dockwray, of Dockwray Hall, in Kendal; issue,

Anne, m. Henry Denton, of Cumberland.

Alice, m. Henry Bankes, of Bank Newton, Yorkshire.

Sir Francis Byndlose, of Barwick Hall, m. 1st, Dorothy, d. of ——— Charnock, of Astley, in Lancashire; issue,

Mary, 5 years old, 1628.

Sir Francis, m. 2ndly, Cicely, d. of Thomas West, lord Delawarr (she re-married sir John Byron, of Newstead, Nottinghamshire); issue,

Robert Byndlose, his heir.

Delawarr, died young.

Francis, third son.

Dorothy.

Robert Byndlose, of Barwick Hall, m. ——— d. of ——— Perry, Alderman of London; issue,

Cicely.

**ARMS.** Quarterly, per fesse indented or and gules, on a bend azure, a cinquefoil between two martlets or.

**CREST.** A demi horse argent, ducally gorged azure.

### BRATHWAITE.

———— Brathwaite, of ——— m. ——— ;  
issue,

Richard Brathwaite, of Ambleside, in Westmoreland,  
m. Anne, d. of William Sandys, of East Thwaite, in Lancashire; issue,

Robert Brathwaite, of Ambleside, in Westmoreland,  
m. Alice, d. of John Williamson, of Milbeck, in Cumberland, by Isabell, d. of ——— Thirkeld, of Milberton, in Cumberland; issue,

Anne, m. John Bradley, of Bradley, in Lancashire.

Thomas Brathwaite, his heir.

Elizabeth, m. George Benson, of Hugill, in Westmoreland.

Isabell, m. Thomas Briggs, of Caumire, in Westmoreland.

James Brathwaite, of Ambleside, m. Jane, d. Barnard Benson, of Lowrigge, in Westmoreland; issue,

Ann, m, ——— Whelpdale, of Penrith, in Cumberland.

Thomas Brathwaite, ob. s. p.



Gawen Brathwaite, of Ambleside, esq., m. Elizabeth, d. of John Penruddock, of Hale, in Wiltshire.

Isabell, m. Daniel Fleming, of Skirwith, in Cumberland.

Dorothy, m. Thomas Warwick, of Warwick Bridge, in Cumberland.

Gawen, third son, m. Isabell, d. of Richard Forster, Gentleman; issue,

Dorothy, m. Francis Salkeld, of Whitehall, in Cumberland.

Mary, m. John Brisko, of Crofton, in Cumberland.

Anne, m. Allen Ascough, of Middleton-one-Row, in Durham.

Thomas Brathwaite, of Burneshead, in Westmoreland, m. Dorothy, d. of Robert Byndlose, of Hailston, in Westmoreland; issue,

Agnes, m. sir Thomas Lamplew, of Dovenby, in Cumberland.

Sir Thomas Brathwaite, his heir.

Alice, m. Thomas Barton, of Whenby, Yorkshire.

Richard Brathwaite, of Burneshead, m. Frances, d. of James Lawson, of Nesham, in the Bishopric of Durham; issue,

Thomas.	Richard.	Dorothy.
Robert.	John.	Alice.
James.	Philip.	Agnes.

Sir Thomas Brathwaite, of Warcop, in Westmoreland,

m. Elizabeth, d. of sir John Dalston, of Dalston, in Cumberland; issue,

George Brathwaite.

Dorothy.

ARMS. Gules, on a chevron argent, three cross crosslets fitchée sable.

CREST. A greyhound couchant argent, collared and lined or.

### DALSTON.

Sir John Dalston, of Dalston, in Cumberland, m.  
——— d. ——— of Warcop; issue,

Sir George Dalston, of Dalston.

Elizabeth, m. sir Thomas Brathwaite, of Warcop, in Westmoreland.

ARMS. Argent, a chevron engrailed between three daws' heads erased gules; quartering, argent, a cross engrailed between four annulets sable.

CREST. Out of a ducal coronet a falcon's head or, beaked sable.

### MUSGRAVE.\*

Thomas Musgrave,† of ———, m. Margæret, d. of sir William Rosse, of Yolton, in Yorkshire, and sister and coheir of sir Alexander; issue,

---

\* This Pedigree is entered in f. 4 of the MS. and at f. 14 there is another of the same family, with some additions. The variations in these pedigrees are given as foot notes.

† At f. 14 styled sir Thomas Musgrave, knt., who had with his wife, Hubterswell and Cowen Wood.

Sir Thomas Musgrave, knt., m. Elizabeth, d. of William Fitz Williams,, of Sprotborough; issue,

Sir Thomas Musgrave, knt., m. Alice, d. of Richard, earl of Cambridge, by Maud, d. of Thomas, lord Clifford (this Richard, earl of Cambridge, gave with Alice, the Manors of Crosby, and Murton, in Westmoreland); issue,

Richard, his heir.

Elizabeth, m. Henry Wharton.

Sir Richard Musgrave, knt., m. Elizabeth, d. of sir Thomas Betham, of Betham, sister of sir Edward; issue,

Elizabeth, m. Thomas Gaith.

Isabell, m. Thomas Midleton.

Eleanor, m. Rawlin Thornborough.

Mary, m. Thomalin Warcop.

Richard Musgrave,\* m. ——— d. and coheir of William Stapleton; issue,

Mary, m. Nicholas Ridley.

Thomas Musgrave.

Agnes, m. Robert Warcop.

Margaret, m. Thomas Elderton.

John, died young.

Thomas Musgrave, of ———, m. Joan, d. and coheir of sir William Stapleton, of Westmoreland; issue,

---

\* At f. 14 this marriage is thus given :—Richard Musgrave, m. ——— widow of sir Richard Hilton, and coheir of sir Miles Stapleton.

Margaret, m. John Sandford.

Richard Musgrave, his heir.

Eleanor, m. Christopher Lancaster.

Sir John Musgrave, m. 1st, Jane, d. of (sir) John Crakenthorp; issue,

Lancelot Musgrave.

Sir John Musgrave, m. 2ndly, Margaret, sister to the lord Dudley; issue,

Thomas Musgrave.

Richard Musgrave.

Oliver Musgrave.

Margaret.

Anne.

Nicholas Musgrave, m. Margaret, d. and heir of William Filioll; issue,

Thomas Musgrave, m. ————; issue,

William Musgrave, m. ————; issue,

Thomas Musgrave, of Hayton, in Cumberland, m. ————; issue,

Isabell, m. John Musgrave, of Caterlayne, fourth son of sir Symon Musgrave.

William Musgrave, of Penrith, m. 1st, Margaret, d. of ———— Thornell, and widow of ———— Middleton; issue,

Cuthbert Musgrave, m. Jane, d. and coheir of Richard Launder.

Gilbert Musgrave.\*

Richard Musgrave.

Leonard Musgrave.

Marmaduke Musgrave.

George Musgrave.

William Musgrave, m. 2ndly, Felice, d. and coheir  
of William Filioll; issue,

William Musgrave.

Isabell, m. John Crakenthorp, of Newbiggon.\*

Richard Musgrave, m. Joan, d. of Thomas, lord Clif-  
ford; issue,

Margaret, m. John Heron, of Chipchase.

Thomas Musgrave.

John Musgrave.

Sir Edward Musgrave.

Mary, m. George Martindale.

Jane.

Sir Edward Musgrave, of Hartley, in Westmore-  
land, m. Joan, d. and coheir of (sir) Christopher Ward;  
issue,

William, his heir.

Edward Musgrave, second son.

Sir Symon Musgrave, third son, m. Julian, d. of  
William Ellerker, of Ellerker; issue,

Christopher Musgrave, of Hartley Castle, in West-

---

\* Mentioned only in the Pedigree at f. 14.

moreland, m. Joan, d. of Henry Curwen; issue,  
Mary, ob. s. p.

Sir Richard Musgrave, of ——— m. Frances,  
d. of Philip, lord Wharton; issue,  
Mary.

Julian, m. William Skelton.\*

Thomas Musgrave, Captain of Berwick Castle, m.  
Ursula, d. and coheir of ——— Carnaby.

Sir Richard Musgrave, of Norton Conyers, m.  
Jane, d. of ——— Dawson,† of Cumberland.

John Musgrave, of Caterlayne, m. Julian d. of  
Michael Musgrave, of Plumpton; 2ndly Isabell,  
d. of Thomas Musgrave, of Heyton, in Cumberland.

Anne, m. sir Richard Curwen, Knt.

Maudlyn.

Elizabeth, m. John, lord Latimer,

Sir William Musgrave, m, Elizabeth, d. of sir Thomas  
Curwen, by his second wife; issue,

Sir Richard Musgrave, m. Agnes, d. of Thomas lord  
Wharton; issue,

Thomas, ob, s. p.

Eleanor, m. Robert Bowes, of Aske.

\* Mentioned in the Pedigree at f. 14, as John Skelton.

† Mentioned in the Pedigree at f. 14, a Jane, d. of John  
Dalston, of Dalston, in Cumberland.

- ARMS. Azure, six annulets, three, two, and one, or.  
 Quarterings, 1st. Lozengy argent and gules.  
                   2nd. Argent, three mullets sable.  
                   3rd. Argent, three swords conjoined in fesse point  
                       gules.  
                   4th. Gules, six annulets, three, two, and one, or.  
                   5th. Azure, a cross flory or.  
 CREST. Two arms in armour embowed argent, garnished or,  
           holding an annulet of the last.

## WARCOP.

Richard Warcop, of Smerdale, in Westmoreland, m.  
 Thomas d. of ——— Radcliffe; issue,

Edward Warcop, of Smerdale, m. Anne, d. of Thomas  
 Layton; issue,

John Warcop, of Smerdale, m. Anne, d. of Geoffrey  
 Lancaster, of Cracktrees; issue,

James Warcop.

Thomas Warcop, his heir.

Elizabeth, m. Cuthbert Warcop, of Cowley.

Edward Warcop, third son.

George Warcop, fourth son.

Matthew Warcop, fifth son.

Catherine.

Anne.

Thomas Warcop, Pensioner, was of Smerdale, m.  
 Anne, d. of Rowland Thornborough; issue,

Frances, first dau. and coheir, m. John Dalston, of Dalston, in Cumberland.

———. second dau. and coheir, in Talbot Bowes, second son of sir George Bowes.

ARMS. Sable, three covered cups argent; quartering, argent, on a fesse gules, three cushions or.

CREST. A boar's head coupé argent.

## CARUS.

William Carus, of Asthwaite, in Westmoreland, m.

———; issue,

William Carus, of Asthwaite, m. Margaret, d. of

——— Willson, of Staveley, in Westmoreland; issue,

Christopher Carus.

William Carus, his heir.

Robert Carus.

William Carus, of Asthwaite, m. Isabell, d. of Thomas Laybourne, of Cunswick, in Westmoreland; issue,

Adam Carus, clerk.

Elizabeth, m. Roger Smith, of Kendal.

Sir Thomas, his heir.

Margaret, m. Christopher Sands, of Furnes.

Anne, m. Christopher Nicholson, of Crook, in Westmoreland.



Ellen, m. Randall Washington, of Sap, in Westmoreland,

Jane, m. Henry Sarey, of Plumpton, in Westmoreland.

Robert Carus.

Christopher Carus.

Richard Carus.

Sir Thomas Carus, of ———, justice of the kings bench, m. Katherine, d. and heir of Thomas Preston, of Preston Patrick, in Westmoreland; (vide Visitation of Durham); issue,

Mary, m. Henry Kighley, of Inslip, in Lancashire.

Thomas Carus, his heir.

Richard Carus.

Christopher Carus.

Grisold.

Etheldred, m. William Thornborough, of Hampsfield, in Lancashire.

Thomas Carus, of Kendal, m. Anne, d. and heir of Wilfred Preston, of Overbiggin, in Westmoreland; issue,

Elizabeth, d. and heir, m. Nicholas Curwen, of Workington, in Cumberland; issue,

Mary, m. sir Henry Witherington.

Anne.

Jane.

ARMS. Azure, on a chevron between ten cinquefoils argent, three mullets gules.

CREST. A falcon with wings expanded sable, beaked belled and jessed or, charged on the breast with a cinquefoil argent.

## LOWTHER.

Sir Hugh Lowther, m. ———, d. of Pierce Tillyoll,  
(rather Fillyoll); issue,

Sir Hugh Lowther, m. ———, d. of ——— lord Lucy  
of Cockermouth; issue,

Sir Robert Lowther, m. Margaret, d. and heir of Wil-  
liam Strickland, bishop of Carlisle; issue,

Hugh Lowther, m. ——— d. of ——— Danwater;\*  
issue,

Hugh Lowther, m. ——— d. of William Laucaster, of  
Cockbridge; issue,

Hugh Lowther, m. ——— d. of sir Lancelot Thir-  
keld.

Sir John Lowther, d. of Sir Thomas Curwen, of Work-  
ington, in Cumberland; issue,

Hugh Lowther, of Lowther, in Westmoreland, m. Do-  
rothy, d. of Henry lord Clifford; issue,

Richard Lowther, his heir.

Gerard Lowther, m. ——— d. of ——— Dudley,  
Barbara, m. Thomas Carleton.

Anne, m. ——— Wybar.

Margaret, m. John Richmond.

Frances, m. sir Henry Goodere, of Yolesworth, in  
Warwickshire.

---

\* *Qry.* Derwentwater.

Richard Lowther, of Lowther, m. Frances, d. of John Midleton, of Midleton Hall, in Westmoreland; issue

Christopher Lowther, his heir.

Gerard Lowther, chief justice of Ireland, m. Ist.

——— d. of ——— Clybourne, of Westmoreland, 2nd.

——— d. of ——— Welby, of Yorkshire; ob. s. p.

Hugh Lowther.

Lancelot Lowther.

William Lowther.

Christopher Lowther, of Lowther, m. Eleanor, d. of Sir William Musgrave; issue,

John Lowther, his heir.

Richard Lowther, justice of the peace in Middlesex, m. ——— d. of Williams, of ———, of ——— in Wales; issue,

Eleanor, only d. and heir.

Lancelot Lowther, living in Ireland.

William Lowther, living in Ireland.

Robert Lowther, of London, m. Margaret, d. of Thomas Cutler, of Stainborough, in Yorkshire.

Eleanor, m. Richard Fallowfield, of Strickland, in Yorkshire.

John Lowther, of Lowther, m. Eleanor, d. of ——— Fleming, of Rydal, in Westmoreland; issue,

John Lowther, of Lowther (1630), m. Mary, d. of sir Richard Fletcher, of Cockerham, in Westmoreland; issue,

John Lowther.

ARMS. Or, six annulets, three, two, and one, sable.

## DUCKETT.

Richard Duckett, of ———, in Westmoreland, m. Mabell, d. of sir Roger Bellingham, of ——— Kent ; issue,

Thomas Duckett, of ———, m. Elizabeth, d. of Thomas Midleton, of Midleton Hall, by Isabell, d. of sir Richard Musgrave, knt. ; issue,

Thomas Duckett, ob. s. p.

Richard Duckett, his heir.

Jane, m. William Allennys.

Thomas Duckett, of Grayrigge, in Westmoreland, m. Eleanor, d. of William Harrington, of Wresham, in Lancashire ; issue,

Robert Duckett.

Anne, m. Thomas Weshington, of Hulled, in Westmoreland.

Richard Duckett, his heir.

Mabell, m. John Whittington, of Barwick.

Richard Duckett, m. Anne, d. of John Fleming ; issue, Elizabeth.

ARMS. Sable, a saltire argent.

Quarterings, 1st. Argent, three horns sable, stringed gules.

2nd. Argent, three bendlets gules, on a chief of the last, a lion rampant of the first.

3rd. Gules a saltire argent, between twelve cross crosslets, or.

## MIDLETON.

Thomas Middleton, of Middleton Hall, in Westmoreland,  
m. ———— issue,

John Middleton, his heir.

Katherine, m. William Withington.

Margaret, m. John Morley.

Agnes, m. John Chamber.

Joan, m. John Manser.

Richard Middleton, m. Alice, d. of Thomas Middleton,  
of Lancashire ; issue,

Lewis Middleton, m. Joan, d. and heir of John  
Graunson ; issue,

Thomas Middleton.

Margaret.

John Middleton.

Anne.

Isabell, m. Thomas Atkinson.

Elizabeth, m. John Roos.

Alice, m. John Warffe.

Alice, m. John Mawsatt.

Alexander Middleton, m. Isabell, d. of ——— Moore ;  
issue,

Margaret.

Alexander Middleton.

Thomas Middleton.

Edward Midleton.

Joan, m. ——— Lewed of Preston.

Anne.

Joan.

Joan, m. John Wraton.

George Midleton, m. ——— countess of Somerset.

Richard Midleton, m. Margaret, d. of ——— Bon-  
bon.

William Midleton, m. ——— d. of John Barnyke ;  
issue,

William Middleton.

Anne, a nun.

John Midleton, of ——— m. ——— d. of John Med-  
calfe, issue,

Reginald Midleton,

Geoffrey Middleton, (vide Visitation of Lancashire,)

Thomas Midleton, his heir.

Alice, m. Nicholas Clapham.

Jacomin, m. Richard Preston.

Joan, m. John Gibson.

Thomas Midleton, of ——— m. Isabell, d. of Richard  
Musgrave ; issue,

Geoffrey Midleton.

Reginald, ob. inf.

Thomas Midleton, his heir.

Elizabeth, m. Thomas Duckett.

——— Midleton, of ——— m. Elizabeth, d. of  
Robert Sennes ; issue,

James Middleton.

Thomas Middleton.

Margaret.

Richard Middleton.

Robert Middleton.

Mabell, m. Roger Bellingham.

Agnes, died young.

Thomas Middleton, of ——— m. Margaret, d. of Roger Lassells; issue,

Elizabeth, m. John Hamerton.

Anne, m. Edward Eglybye.

John Middleton, died young.

Richard Middleton.

Robert Middleton.

Geoffrey Middleton, his heir.

George Middleton.

Herbert Middleton.

Roger Middleton, died young.

Geoffrey Middleton, m. 1st, Margaret, d. of George Kirkham, of Wormington, in Northampton; issue,

George Middleton,

m. 2ndly, ——— d. of ——— Kirkby, of ——— in Lancashire.

ARMS. Argent, a cross engrailed sable.

## LAYBOURN.

James Laybourne, of Cunswick, in Westmoreland, esq.,  
m. ——— d. of sir Henry Bellingham ; issue,

Thomas Laybourne, of Cunswick, esq., m. Margaret, d.  
of sir John Pennington, of Moncaster ; issue,

Sir James Laybourne, his heir.

Isabell, m. William Carus, of Asthwaite, in West-  
moreland.

Sir James Laybourne, of Cunswick, m, 1st, Eleanor, d.  
of sir Thomas Curwen, knt. ; issue,

Nicholas Laybourne, his heir.

Katherine Labourne,  
m. 2ndly, Helen, d. of Thomas Preston ; issue,  
Thomas Laybourne.

Elizabeth, m. 1st. Thomas lord Dacres, and 2dly,  
Thomas duke of Norfolk.

Anne, m. Sir William Stanley, lord Mounteagle, son  
and heir of Sir Thomas.

Nicholas Laybourne, of Cunswick, m. Elizabeth, d. of  
——— Warcop, of Smerdale ; issue,

James Laybourne, his heir.

William Laybourne, m. Jane, d. and coheir of John  
Bradley, of Betham, in Westmoreland, and of Bradley.

Bridgett, m. Arthur, second son of James Philips,  
of Bignell, in Yorkshire.



Elizabeth, m. ——— Browne, ob. s. p.

Julyan, m. 1st, to ——— Redman; issue,  
 ——— m. to ——— Conyers.

m. 2nd, ——— Borough.

Dorothy, m. ——— Skelton, of Branthwait, in  
 Cumberland; issue,

Thomas Skelton.

m. 2nd. ——— Brockas of Claghton, in Lanca-  
 shire; issue,

John Brockas.

Thomas Brockas.

Three daughters.

James Laybourne, of Cunswick, m. Bridget, d. and heir  
 of sir Ralph Bulmer; issue,

John Laybourne, his heir.

Thomas Laybourne, second son, m. Mary, d. of Wil-  
 liam Bradley, no issue living.

Nicholas Laybourne, third son.

George Laybourne, fourth son.

Elizabeth, m. Anthony Duckett, of Grayrigge, esq.;  
 issue,

James Duckett.

Dorothy, second d. m. William Weaver, of Lanca-  
 shire.

Frances, third. d. m. George Dabridgecourt, of  
 Stratfieldsaye, in Hampshire, s. p.

John Laybourne, of Cunswick, esq., living 1652-53,  
m. d. of Katherine, d. of ——— Carus, of Hoton ; issue,

William, m. Elizabeth, d. of ———

Thomlinson, of London, ob. s. p.

Thomas Laybourne, second son, m. Dorothy Lassells, sole heir of William Lassells ; issue,

Mary, only d. not a year old, Jan. 1652-53.

James Laybourne, third son, m. in France.

John Laybourne, fourth son.

Jane, d. m. Richard Sherborne, esq., of Heesham,  
in Lancashire, ob. s. p.

Elizabeth, second d. m. in Maryland.

Lucy, third d. m. 1st, Thomas Kitson, m. 2dly, Robert Westby.

m. 2nd. Mary, d. and sole heir of ——— Crofts, of Claghton, and widow of William Lassells, of Brackenborough, in Yorkshire ; issue,

George Laybourne.

Nicholas Laybourne, second son.

Roger Laybourne, third son.

Charles Laybourne, fourth son,

William Laybourne, fifth. son.

Frances.

Katherine.

ARMS. Azure, six lions rampant argent ; quartering, argent, on a bend sable, three annulets of the field, in chief a trefoil slipped sable.

CREST. A falcon reguardant wings expanded azure, beaked belled and jessed or.

### BRIGGS.

Thomas Briggs, of Calmine, in Westmoreland, m. Isabella, d. of Robert Brathwaite, of Ambleside, in Westmoreland ; issue,

Thomas Briggs, eldest son, ob. s. p.

John Briggs, second son, ob. s. p.

Agnes, sister and coheir, m. sir Richard Hutton, knt., judge.

Anne, sister and coheir, m. Edmund Stanley, son and heir of Thomas Stanley, of Calgarth.

### BENSON.

George Benson, of Hugell, in Westmoreland, m. Elizabeth, d. of Robert Brathwaite, of Ambleside, in Westmoreland,

Mabell, d. and coheir, m. John Preston, son of Christopher Preston, of Holker, in Lancashire ; issue,

George Preston

m. 2nd, Thomas Farington.

Anne, m. John Rodes, s. and heir of Francis Rodes, one of the justices of the common pleas.

## BRADLEY.

John Bradley, of Bradley, in Lancashire, m. Katherine,  
d. of ——— Catherall, of Newhall, in Cravan; issue,  
Allen Bradley.

John Bradley.

Thomas Bradley, his heir.

——— m. ——— Rodes, of Chipping.

Thomas Bradley, of Bradley, m. Grace, d. of Hugh  
Sherborne, of Stainhurst, in Lancashire; issue,

Hugh Bradley.

Thomas Bradley.

John Bradley, his heir.

Anne, m. Robert Lawrence, of Yelland, in Lancashire.

Ellen, m. Anthony Curwen, of Comberton in Lancashire.

John Bradley, of Bradley, and of Betham, in Westmoreland, m. Anne, d. of Robert Brathwaite, of Ambleside; issue,

Ellen, d. and coheir, m. John Osbaldeston, of Osbaldeston, in Lancashire.

Elizabeth, m. Thomas Talbot, of Baghall or Bashall, in Yorkshire.

Jane, m. William Laybourne, of Cunswick, in Westmoreland.

## LEVENS.

———— Levens, of Levens Hall, in Westmoreland, m.  
 ——— d. of ——— Duckett, of ——— in Westmore-  
 land; issue,

John Levens, 1st son. ob. s. p.

Lawrence Levens, second son.

James Levens, third son.

Roger Levens, fourth son.

———— m. ——— Taylor, of Underbarrow, in  
 Westmoreland.

———— m. ——— Ward, of Underbarrow.

Lawrence Levens, of Levens Hall, 2nd son and heir,  
 m. ——— d. ——— Godmands, of Strickland, in the  
 Parish of Kendal, in Westmoreland; issue,

Henry Levens, ob. s. p.

William Levens, his heir.

Katherine, m. David Pratt, of the City of Oxford.

Margaret, m. John Tod, of Stedall, in Westmore-  
 land.

Anne, m. Thomas Rowlandson, of Hearsham, in  
 Westmoreland.

Another d. whose name I know not.

William Levens, of Crooke, in Kendal Parish, m.  
 Agnes, d. of ——— Lockey, of Crooke; issue,

Lawrence Levens.

Agnes, m. Christopher Rocking.

Margaret, ob. s. p.

William Levens, his heir.

Mabell, m. Richard Barnard, of ——— in Oxfordshire.

Christopher Levens, third son.

Katherine, m. William Keene, of Botley, in Berkshire.

William Levens, of the City of Oxford, sometime mayor there, and one of the justices, m. Ursula, d. of Richard Whittington, alderman of Oxford ; issue,

Humphrey Levens, his heir.

William Levens, second son, ob. s. p.

Henry Levens, third son, ob. s. p.

William Levens, fourth son, ob. s. p.

Anne.

Mary.

Helen, m. Matthew Harrison, of Oxford.

Martha, m. Henry Nicholls, of Southam, in Warwickshire.

Humphrey Levens, of Evemley, in Northamptonshire, m. Elizabeth, d. of Thomas Wright, of Oxford ; issue,

William Levens, 16 years old.

Martha.

Joan.

## THORNBOROUGH.

William Thornborough, of Thornborough, in Yorkshire,  
m. ——— d. of ——— ; issue,

Sir William Thornborough, of Thornborough, knt., m.  
Anne, d. of Richard Mauleverer ; issue,

William Thornborough.

John Thornborough.

Anne, m. Christopher Curwen, esq.

John Thornborough, of Hampsfield, in Lancashire, m.  
Elizabeth, d. of Sir Henry Pierpoint ; issue,

William Thornborough, his heir.

Thomas Thornborough, second son.

John Thornborough, dean of York, third son.

Margaret, m. William Haston, of ——— in Lancashire.

William Thornborough, m. Katherine, d. of William  
Hilton, esq. ; issue,

William Thornborough.

Henry Thornborough.

Thomas Thornborough, his heir.

Mary, m. Thomas Southworth.

Katherine, m. John Balderstone.

Thomas Thornborough, m. Mary, d. of sir John Dalton, knt. ; issue,

Henry Thornborough, his heir.

Thomas Thornborough, second son.

Henry Thornborough, third son.

Richard Thornborough, fourth son.

Robert Thornborough, fifth son.

Henry Thornborough, m. Elizabeth, d. of Matthew Booth ; issue,

William Thornborough, his heir.

John Thornborough, second son, vide Southampton.

Henry Thornborough, third son.

Jane, m. William Bradshaw.

Catherine, a nun.

Elizabeth, m. Piers Starkey.

William Thornborough, of Selshead, in Westmoreland.  
m. Eleana, d. of sir Richard Musgrave ; issue,

William Thornborough, of Hampsfield, in Lancashire,  
m. Elizabeth, d. and heir of Thomas Broughton, of  
Broughton, in Lancashire ; issue,

Rowland Thornborough, his heir.

Anne, m. Thomas Preston, of Levens.

Thomas Thornborough, second son.

Nicholas Thornborough, third son.

Eleanor, m. Richard Curwen.

Isabell, m. William Clifton, of Westby.

Rowland Thornborough, of Hampsfield, m. Margaret  
d. of sir Geoffrey Midleton, of Midleton, in Westmore-  
land.

Ellen, m. Robert Beck, of ——— in Westmoreland.



Sir William Thornborough, knt., his heir.

Elizabeth, m. Thomas Warcop, of Smerdale, in Westmoreland.

Rowland Thornborough, of ———, m. d. of Geoffrey Midleton; issue,

William Thornborough.

Anne, m. 1st, Thomas Rosse; 2ndly Robert Curwen.

Sir William Thornborough, of Hampsfield, knt., m. Thomasin, d. and coheir of Robert Bellingham, of Burnishead, in Westmoreland; issue,

William Thornborough, his heir.

Rowland, second son, ob. s. p.

Margaret, m. Richard Fallowfield, of Nelkenthorp, in Westmoreland.

Nicholas Thornborough, of Whitwell, in Westmoreland, m. Isabell, d. of Richard Salkeld, of Thornby; issue,

William Thornborough.

Thomas Thornborough.

Thomasin.

Dorothy.

Thomasin, m. Hugh Dickinson, of Lancashire.

Cicely, m. John Wharton, of Kirkly Thewer, in Westmoreland.

Dorothy, m. Henry Midleton, of Barney Castle.

William Thornborough, of Hampsfield, m. Etheldred, d.

of Thomas Carus, one of the justices of the king's bench ;  
issue,

Rowland Thornborough, of Hampsfield, m. Jane, d.  
of Thomas Dalton, of Thuman, in Lancashire.

Anne, ob. s. p.

Thamasin.

ARMS. Ermine, fretty gules ; a chief of the last.  
Quarterings, 1st. Argent, two bars gules, on a canton of the  
second, a cross of the first ; for Broughton.  
2nd. Argent, two bars and a canton gules, over all  
a bend azure ; for Coupland.  
3rd. Sable, fretty argent ; for Harrington.  
4th. Argent, three bugle horns sable, stringed or ;  
for Bellingham.  
5th, Argent, three bendlets gules, on a canton of  
the second, a lion rampant of the first ; for  
Burnishead.  
A crescent for difference.

CRESTS. 1st, a tiger sejant argent, pelletée ; 2nd, a martin  
gules, charged on the shoulder with a crescent.

## BELLINGHAM.

Richard de Bellingham, temp. Hen. II, and Ric. I, m.  
——— ; issue,

Eudo Bellingham, High Sheriff of Westmoreland, 8  
and 9 Ric. I, m. ——— ; issue,

Roger de Bellingham, temp, John, and Hen. III, m.  
——— ; issue,

John de Bellingham, temp. Hen. III, m. ———  
 ———; issue,

Robert Bellingham, of Bellingham, and Owstery.  
 temp Edw. II, m. Christian, d. and heir of sir Gilbert  
 Burnishead, knt; issue,

Robert Bellingham, temp. Edw. II and Ric. II, m.  
 Margaret, d. of ——— ———; issue,

Richard Bellingham, temp. Ric. II and Hen. IV, m.  
 Anne, d. of ——— ———; issue,

Sir Robert Bellingham, knt., temp. Hen. V and Hen.  
 VI, m. Elizabeth, d. of sir Richard Tunstall, of Therland,  
 in Nottinghamshire, knt.; issue,

Sir Henry Bellingham, his heir.

Richard Bellingham, second son, lord of Naunton, in  
 Lincolnshire, m. ——— widow of William Marley; issue,

Thomas Bellingham, m. 1st, ———, sister and  
 heir of ——— Wastling; issue,

Robert Bellingham, ob. s. p.

Thomas Bellingham, ob. s. p.

Alice, m. Robert Oliver; issue,

Stephen Oliver.

Richard Bellingham, eldest son, m. Jane, d. of  
 Robert Evers, of Belton, in the Isle of Axholme;  
 issue,

Katherine, m. Nicholas Barnaby.

Joan.

Troth.

Maud.

Robert Bellingham, second son.

Richard Bellingham, third son.

Thomas Bellingham, fourth son.

Christopher Bellingham, fifth son.

John Bellingham, eldest son, of Groomby Wade, in Lincolnshire, 1582, m. Alice, d. of Stephen Lodington, of Stratton, in Lincolnshire ; issue,

John Bellingham, second son.

Thomas Bellingham, third son, ob. s. p.

Troth, m. Thomas Stanton, of Stanton, in Lincolnshire.

Katherine, m. ——— Gannock, of Sybsey, in Lincolnshire.

Isabell, m. Jerome Markham.

William Bellingham, m. Frances, d. of Alexander Amcotts, of Astrop, in Lincolnshire ; issue,

Richard Bellingham.

Susan.

Sarah.

Judith.

Thomas Bellingham, m. 2ndly, d. of ——— Hotham.

Robert Bellingham, a captain, at Berwick on Tweed.

Thomas Bellingham, of Lyminster, in Sussex, m. 1st, Joan, d. of ——— ; issue,

Thomas Bellingham.

John Bellingham.

Jane, m. Ralph Shirley, of Wiston, in Sussex.

Thomas Bellingham, m. 2ndly, Jane, d. and heir of  
sir John Wiltshire, knt. ;\* issue,

---

#### WILTSHIRE.\*

John Wiltshire, of Heydon, in Essex, 17 Ric. II, m. ———  
——— ; issue,

Richard Wiltshire, in the time of Hen. V, m. ——— ——— ;  
issue.

Nicholas Wiltshire, 2 Ed. IV, m. ——— d. of and heir of  
Acklevit, of Normandy ; issue,

Sir John Wiltshire, of ——— knt., m. Margaret, d. and heir of  
John Graund, of Normandy ; issue,

Bridgett, m. 1st, sir Richard Wingfield. knt. ; 2ndly, sir  
Nicholas Harvey, knt. ; 3rdly, sir Robert Tirwhitt, knt.

Sir John Wiltshire, m. 2dly, ——— d. and coheir of ———  
Clothall ; issue,

Jane, d. and heir, m. Thomas Bellingham.

#### POWER AND CLOTHALL.

Stephen Power, sergeant-at-law, was of Thakeham, in Sussex,  
m. ——— ——— ; issue,

——— d. and coheir, m. ——— Clothall, of ——— in  
——— ; issue,

——— d. and coheir, m. sir John Wiltshire, knt., as re-  
lated in the Wiltshire Pedigree above.

Margaret (or Catherine) d. and coheir, m. Stephen Apsley,  
of ——— in ——— ; issue,

William Apsley, of ———, m. ——— ———.

Ralph Bellingham, of Lyminster, m. Anne, d. of  
sir John Devenish, knt. ; issue,

William Bellingham, serjeant of the wood-yard,  
ob. s. p.

John Bellingham, of Lyminster, m. 1st, Anne,  
d. of sir Edward Palmer, of Sussex ; issue,

Joan, m. Leonard Holland, of Calais ; issue,  
George Holland.

m. 2ndly, Bridget, d. and heir of ——— Wetten-  
hall ; issue,

Ralph Bellingham, m. Blanch, d. of ———  
Vaughan, of Wales, ob. s. p.

Richard Bellingham, ob. s. p.

Margaret, m. Ralph Boys, of Kent ; issue,

Samuel Boys, m. ——— d. of ———  
Cromer, of Kent.

m. 3rdly, Margery, d. of ——— ——— ; is-  
sue,

Thomas ob. s. p.

Blanch.

Mary, m. ——— Hollyad.

Edward Bellingham, second son, of Erringham,  
m. Jane, d. of John Shelly, of Michelgrove, in Sus-  
sex ; issue,

Sir Edward Bellingham, lord deputy of Ireland.

John Bellingham, of Erringham, m. Joan, d.

and sole heir of ——— Delves, of Franfield,  
 (she re-married James Gage, of Bentley) ; issue,  
 Elizabeth, m. Walter Henley, of Kent.

John Bellingham, of Erringham, m. Anne  
 Hill, d. of the lady Mason, (she re-married John  
 Lewknor ; ) issue,

Thomas Bellingham.

Elizabeth, died young.

Anne, m. John Shelley.

Elizabeth, m. Francis Cotton, s. of Sir  
 Richard Cotton ; issue.

John Cotton.

Mary, m. Thomas Fenner, s. of the judge ;  
 issue.

Anne Fenner.

John Bellingham of Erringham, m. Mary,  
 d. of Richard Bellingham, of Houghton ;  
 issue,

Mary, m. sir Thomas Springatt, knt.

John Bellingham, second son, died  
 young.

Francis Bellingham, third son.

Anne.

Richard Bellingham, eldest son, of  
 Erringham, m. Joan, d. of Thomas Bowyer,  
 of Lethorne, sister of sir Thomas Bowyer,  
 bart. ; issue,

Thomas Bellingham, of Erringham,  
m. Margaret, d. of Henry Shelley, of  
Patcham, in Sussex.

James Bellingham.

Richard Bellingham, of Houghton, m. ——— d.  
of sir John Dawtrey, of More, widow of ———  
Scrase; m. 2ndly, Parnell, d. of John Cheney, of  
Warbleton, in Sussex, widow of ——— Wells, of  
Bucksted; issue,

Edward Bellingham, of Newtimber, in Sussex,  
m. 1st, Barbara, d. of Edward Banester, of Jess-  
worth, co. Southampton; issue,

Edward Bellingham.

Dorothy, died young.

Mary, m. Captain Thomas Fenner, of Shore-  
ham, in Sussex.

Barbara, m. Thomas Gay, of London, grocer.

Elizabeth, m. John Gifford, of Northall, in  
Middlesex.

Richard Bellingham, eldest son, of Newtim-  
ber, m. Mary, d. of Richard Whaley, of Nott-  
inghamshire; issue.

Mary, m. John Bellingham, of Erringham.

Margaret, m. Barnard Whetstone, of  
Woodford, in Essex.

Jane, m. Henry Shelley, of Patcham, in  
Sussex.



Anne, died young.

Jane and Frances, twins.

Elizabeth, died young.

Dorothy.

Richard Bellingham,

Henry Bellingham.

John Bellingham.

Thomas Bellingham, died young.

Sir Edward Bellingham, of Houghton, in  
Sussex, m. Troth, d. of Foljambe ; issue,

Thomas Bellingham.

Edward Bellingham, m. 2ndly, Elizabeth, d. of

John Wood, of Hamsey, in Sussex.

Anne, m. Robert Bold, of Petersfield, in  
Hampshire.

Henry Bellingham.

Edward Bellingham.

William Bellingham.

John Bellingham.

Richard Bellingham. ob. s. p.

Mary, m. Agmundesham Muschamp, of Un-  
sted, in Surrey.

Elizabeth.

Dorothy.

Barbara.

Thomas Bellingham.

Richard Bellingham, m. 3rdly, Mary, d. and coheir of John Everard, of Albourne, in Sussex, (she re-married George Goring, of Lewes) ; issue,

Edward Bellingham, eldest son, of Putney, in Surrey, m. Ellen, d. of Augustine Hynd, alderman of London, widow of John Dormer, of Putney ; issue,

Sir Edward Bellingham, knt., one of the gentlemen pensioners, is of Woodmancote, in Sussex.

Henry Bellingham, second son, m. Julian, d. of ——— Gurling, of London.

Richard Bellingham, third son, m. Anne, d. and coheir of Walter Maney, brother of Sir Anthony Maney, of Kent ; issue,

George, d. young.

Cæsar Bellingham.

m. 2ndly, ——— widow of ——— Taylor, of ——— in Oxfordshire.

Allan Bellingham, m. ——— d. of ——— Gilpin ; issue,

Thomas Bellingham, m. Maryan, d. of ——— Beck, of Holbrenke ; issue,

James Bellingham.

Allan Bellingham, of Helsington, in Westmoreland, m. 1st, Katherine, d. of Anthony Duckett, Grayrigg ; issue,

Grace, m. 1st, ——— Clybourne, of Clybourne ; 2ndly, Gerard Lowther, second son of Richard Lowther.

——— second daughter.

Mary, third daughter, m. Francis Duckett.

Mary, m. Richard Midleton, second son of John Midleton.

Thomasin, m. Thomas Salkeld, of Corby Castle, in Cumberland.

Agnes,

Dorothy, m. William Borough.

Sir James Bellingham, of Helsington m.

Agnes, d. of sir Henry Curwen, knt. ; issue,

Sir Henry Bellingham.

Allan Bellingham.

Three daughters.

Allan Bellingham, second son.

Robert Bellingham, third son.

Allan Bellingham, m. 2ndly, ——— d. of ——— Sandford.

Sir Henry Bellingham, of Bellingham, knt., m. Katherine, d. of sir Robert Laybourne, of Cunswick, knt. ; issue,

Sir Roger Bellingham, his heir.

Nicholas Bellingham, of Hopton, second son, s. p.

Gilbert Bellingham, third son.

John or James Bellingham, m. ——— d. of Robert Tunstall ; issue,

John Bellingham, of Finchamstead, in Berkshire, Esq., m, Joan, d. of ——— Wakeman, widow of ——— Eldom, of Guildford, in Surrey ; issue,

Henry Bellingham, of Orston St. George, in Wiltshire, m. Dorothy, d. of ——— Lewknor, of Buckenham, in Sussex.

Anne, m. Richard Kirkby.

Mabel, m. John Lownd.

Walter Bellingham, fifth son.

Sir Roger Bellingham, of Bellingham, knight banneret m. 1st, Mabel, d. of Thomas Midleton, of Midleton ; issue,

Sir Robert Bellingham.

Margaret, m. Christopher Curwen.

m. 2ndly, Anne, d. of sir James Pickering, of Killington, knt.

Sir Robert Bellingham, knt. in the time of Henry VIII. disinherited by his father, m. Anne, d. of sir James Pickering, of ——— knt. ; issue,

Dorothy, m. Anthony Duckett, of Grayrigge, in Westmoreland.

Elizabeth, m. Cuthbert Hutton.

Thomasin, m. William Thornborough, of Hampsfield in Lancashire.

Katherine, m. 1st, Richard Ashton, of Middleton ;  
issue,

Margaret, heir to her mother, m. William Davenport, of Bromhall, in Cheshire.

m. 2ndly, sir William Radcliffe, and 3rdly, sir William Davenport, knt.

#### RICHMOND.

John Richmond, m. Margaret, d. of Hugh Lowther, of Lowther, sister to sir Richard ; issue,

John Richmond, of Highatt, m. ——— d. of ———  
Dalston, of Akornbanke, in ——— ; issue,

Christopher Richmond, of Highatt Castle, m. ———  
sister of sir William Chaters, of Crostbrig, in Yorkshire.

ARMS. Barry of six or and gules.

#### STOCKDALE.

William Stockdale, m. ——— d. ——— ——— ;  
issue,

——— his heir.

Robert Stockdale, of Hull, in Yorkshire.

Edmond Stockdale, of Smeton, and Oirsby.

Oliver Stockdale.

——— Stockdale, of Kirkby Lonsdale, in Westmoreland. m. ——— d. of ——— ; issue,

——— Stockdale, m. ——— d. of ——— ; issue,

——— Stockdale, m. ——— d. of ——— ; issue,

——— Stockdale, m. ——— d. of ——— ; issue

Christopher Stockdale, of Barbonne, in Westmoreland.

### MIDDLETON.

Thomas Middleton, of Kirkby Lonsdale, in Westmoreland. m. Anne, d. of Derick Anthony, of London, Graver to the Mint in the Tower of London ; issue,

Richard Middleton,

William Middleton, second son.

Ellen.

Elizabeth.

### LANCASTER.

Sir William Lancaster, of Kendal, knt. m. ———  
——— ; issue,

Gilbert Lancaster.

William Lancaster, m. ——— d. of ——— ;  
issue,

Lucy, m. Marmaduke Thwyng Baron.

——— m. Walter lord Falconbridge.

Margaret, m. Robert Rosse.

Katherine, m. John Delheugh. °

Christian, m. William lord Conyers.

Gilbert Lankaster, m. ———— d. of ————  
 ———— ; issue,

Roger Lankaster, m. ———— d. of ————  
 ———— ; issue,

Christopher Lankaster, his heir.

Richard Lankaster, second son.

Christopher Lankaster, made an entail of his lands to his heirs male temp. Edw. III ; m. Joan, d. of sir Hugh Lowther, knt. ; issue,

Gilbert Lankaster (died before his father), m. Elizabeth, d. of ———— ; issue,

William Lankaster, m. Margaret, d. of Thomas Warcop, of Smerdale ; issue,

Thomas Lankaster, m. Christian, d. of Hugh Salkeld, of Rosgill ; issue,

Sir William Lankaster ; was high sheriff of Westmoreland ; m. Margaret, d. of sir Thomas Strickland, knt. ; issue,

Mabell, m. sir Hugh Lowther, of Lowther, knt.

Hugh Lankaster, second son.

Robert Lankaster.

James Lankaster.

Gilbert Lankaster.

Edward Lankaster.

Hugh Lankaster, m. ——— d. of ——— Betsum,  
of Betsum, ; issue,

Christopher Lankaster, m. Eleanor, d. of sir Thomas  
Musgrave, son of sir Richard ; issue,

Thomas Lankaster, eldest son, m. ——— d. of  
——— Laybourne ; issue,

——— eldest d. and coheir.

——— second d. and coheir.

William Lankaster, second son, heir to his brother.

Edward Lankaster, third son.

Stephen Lankaster, fourth son.

Nicholas Lankaster, fifth son.

Margaret, m. John Beest, of Penrith.

Isabell, m. ——— Shipton, of London.

Jane, m. Christopher Lankaster, of Deepdale.

Elizabeth, m. John Hodgson, of Barton.

William Lankaster, m. Elizabeth, d. of sir Hugh Low-  
ther, of Lowther ; issue,

Lancelot Lankaster, of Sockbridge, in Westmoreland,  
m. 1st Anne, d. of Nicholas Harrington, of Sleydall, and  
Uberyhall, in (I think) Westmoreland ; issue,

Edmund Lankaster, his heir.

Eleanor, m. Richard Cleybourne.

Anne, m. John Wharton.

m. 2ndly, Winifred, d. of ——— ——— ; issue,

William Lankaster,



Lancelot Lankaster, third son.

Francis Lankaster, fourth son.

Francis Lankaster, fifth son.

Symon Lankaster, sixth son.

Frances, m, ——— Turner.

Anne.

m. 3rdly, Margaret, d. of Thomas Rookby, of Morton ;  
issue,

Thomas Lankaster.

George Lankaster.

Ambrose Lankaster.

Grace, m. James Harrington, of Wallop, in Cum-  
berland.

Joan, m. Thomas Dyke.

Edmund Lankaster, of Sockbridge (1575), m. Margaret,  
d. of John Middleton, of ——— in ——— esq. ; issue,

Lancelot Lankaster, eldest son.

Richard Lankaster, second son.

Frances, m. ——— ——— .

Margaret.

ARMS. Argent, two bars gules, on a canton of the second, a  
mullet of the first ; quartering, argent, three stags' heads cabossed  
surmounted with cross crosslets fitchée gules.

## WOLSTON.

Arthur Wolston, alias Wilson, of Overstaveley, in Westmoreland, m. Elizabeth. d. of Richard Gilpin, of Ulthwaite Hall, in Kendal ; issue,

William Wolston, his heir.

Reginald Wolston, second son, m. ——— d. and coheir of ——— Newby ; issue,

Edmund, Wolston, of Hertford, m. ——— d. of ——— Walton, of ——— in Suffolk ; issue,

Edward Wolston, died young.

William Wolston, second son.

Thomas Wolston, third son.

Henry Wolston, of Strickland, in Kendal, third son.

Miles Wolston, of Hewgill, in Kendal, m. ——— d. of ——— ——— ; issue,

William Wolston, of ——— m. ——— d. of ——— Hutton, of Westmoreland. ; issue,

Miles Wolston, eldest son, m. Elizabeth, d. of ——— ——— ; issue,

Anne.

George Wolston, second son.

Thomas Wolston, third son, died young.

Thomas Wolston, second son.

George Wolston, third son.

William Wolston. m. Margaret, d. of Rowland Thornborough, of Hampsfield, in Cartmell, in Lancashire.

Edmund Wolston, his heir.

Henry Wolston, second son.

Thomas Wolston, third son.

Rowland Wolston, fourth son.

Robert Wolston, fifth son.

Miles Wolston, sixth son.

Margaret.

Elizabeth.

Edmund Wolston, m. Amyas, d. and coheir of Miles Goodmonte, of Theses, in Staveley, in Kendal ; issue,

William Wolston, ob. s. p.

Thomas Wolston, second son.

Henry Wolston, third son.

Egyon Wolston, fourth son, m. Dorothy, d. and coheir of Thomas Hall, of Rydland, in Gloucestershire, esq. \*

Gennett.

Anne.

---

\* Dorothy, the wife of Egyon Wolston, gave to her husband and to his heirs for ever, all the Manor of Rydland, with the Appurtenances, and other lands in Bristow, in Somersetshire, and Wiltshire, amounting to the sum of £70, or thereabouts, per Annum.

## PHILIPSON.

Robert Philipson, of Hallinghall, in Westmoreland, m. ——— d. of Dockwray, of Dockwray Hall, near Kendal ; issue,

Rowland Philipson, of Hallinghall, (ob. 30 August, 1516), m. Katherine, d. of Richard Carus, of Staveley ; issue,

Robert Philipson, of Hallinghall, (ob. 22 December 1539), m. Jennet, d. of Thomas Laybourne, of Cunswick, in Westmoreland, esq ; issue,

Christopher Philipson, of Calgarth, in Westmoreland, receiver to King Edward the sixth for his revenues in the same county, (ob. 21 August 1566), m. Elizabeth, d. of Robert Briggs, of Helsfell Hall, in Westmoreland ; issue,

Robert Philipson, of the Middle Temple, s. p.

Nicholas Philipson, second son, s. p.

Francis Philipson, third son, s. p.

Rowland Philipson.

Miles Philipson, of Thwatterden Hall, in Westmoreland, justice of the peace, m. Barbara, sister and coheir of Francis Sandis, of Cunnyshed, in co. Lancaster ; issue,

Robert Philipson, of Thwatterden Hall, m. Anne, d. of Ralph Latus, of Berkhall, in Westmoreland ; issue,

Christopher Philipson, of Thwatterden Hall, m.  
Mary, d. of William Hudleston, of Millum Castle,  
in Cumberland ; issue,

Hudleston Philipson, his heir.

Robert Philipson, second son.

Elizabeth.

Elizabeth, m. George Corham, of Barton, in  
the County of Southampton.

Francis Philipson, second son, ob. s. p.

Elizabeth, s. p.

Jane, s. p.

Christopher Philipson, of Cunnyshed. in Lanca-  
shire, m. Bridget, d. of Roger Kirkby, of Kirkby,  
in Lancashire, esq. ; issue,

Miles Philipson, of Cunnyshed, (1638), m. Mar-  
garet, d. of George Anne, of—— Frickley, in  
Yorkshire ; issue,

George Philipson.

Thomas Philipson, ob. s. p.

Christopher Philipson, m. Frances, d. of sir  
George Blondell, of Carington, in Bedfordshire ;  
issue,

Bridget.

Thomas Philipson, ob. s. p.

John Philipson, batchelor of civil law, and fellow  
of Merton College, Oxford.

Mary, m. Samuel Knipe, of Fairbank, in Westmoreland.

Miles Philipson, a captain, m. Mary, d. of———  
Wharton, of Kirkby Thewer, in Westmoreland.

Anne, third d. m. Thomas baron Arundell, of War-  
dour Castle, in Wiltshire, and count of the Empire.

Anne, m. 1st, Christopher Carus, of Staveley,  
Hall, 2ndly, John Richardson, of Rampside Hall, in  
Lancashire.

Jennet, m. Thomas Ward, of Rigmayden, in West-  
moreland.

Rowland Philipson, of Calgarth, esq. justice of the  
peace, m. Katherine, d. and sole heir of Nicholas Carus,  
of Kendal; issue,

Christopher Philipson, of Calgarth, esq. justice of  
the peace, m. Elizabeth, d. of sir Marmaduke Wivell,  
of Constable Burton, in Yorkshire, knt., and bart.  
ob. s. p.

Robert Philipson.

Rowland Philipson, third son, m. Elizabeth, d. of  
Mohun; issue,

Elizabeth, m. Hugh Fisher, of London.

Robert Philipson, of Melsonby, in Yorkshire, m. Anne,  
d. of Geffrey Gournay, of London; issue.

Christopher Philipson, his heir.

Robert Philipson, second son.

Rowland Philipson, third son.

Carus Philipson, fourth son.

Anne. m. Henry Ward, of Rigmaiden, in Westmoreland.

Margaret, second d. of William Shaa, of Cartmelfell, in Lancashire.

Katherine, m. George Gilpin, of Kentmere, in Westmoreland.

John Philipson, fifth son.

Christopher Philipson, of Calgarth (1638), esq., justice of the peace; m. 1st, Mary, d. of Thomas Percy, of Riton, in Yorkshire, ob. s. p.; 2ndly, Anne, d. of Richard Burgh, of Eseby, in Yorkshire, sister and coheir of Lancelot Burgh, of East Hawkerwell, in Yorkshire.

ARMS. Gules, a chevron between three boars heads coupéd ermine.

Quarterings; 1st, or, a fesse dancettée between three cross crosslets fitchée gules.

2nd, Per fesse azure and gules, a castle argent.

CREST. Out of a mural coronet or, a plume of five feathers, three argent, and two gules.

## LAYBOURNE.

Sir James Laybourne, of ——— knt., m. Ellen, d. of Thomas Preston, of Levens Hall, in Westmoreland, (she re-married lord Mounteagle); issue,

Thomas Laybourne.

James Laybourne.

John Laybourne.

James Laybourne.

Elizabeth.

Isabell.

Margaret.

Anne.

Frances.

#### LAYBOURNE.

Sir Symon Laybourne, of———, knt., m. Lucy, d. of  
Roger de la Strange ; issue,

John Laybourne.

Octo. Laybourne.





# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Aclevit	32	Booth	27
Anthony	41	Borough	20, 38
Amcotts	31	Bowes	9
Arundell	49	Bowyer	34
Ascough	4	Boys	33
Ashton	40	Bradley	3, 19, 20
Apsley	32	Bradshaw	27
		Brathwaite	1, 5, 22, 23
Balderstone	26	Briggs	3, 47
Banester	34	Brisko	4
Bankes	2	Brockas	20
Barnaby	30	Broughton	27
Barnard	25	Browne	20
Barnyke	17	Bulmer	20
Barton	4	Burgh	50
Beck	27, 37	Burnishead	30
Beest	43	Byndlose	4
Bellingham	15, 18, 19, 28		
Benson	3	Cambridge	6
Betham	6	Carleton	13
Betsum	43	Carnaby	2
Blondall	48	Carus	19, 21, 29, 47, 49
Bold	36	Catherall	23
Bonnbon	17	Chambers	16

	PAGE		PAGE
Chaters	40	Dickinson	28
Charnock	2	Dyke	44
Cheney	35	Dockwray	2, 47
Clapham	17	Dormer	37
Clifford	6, 8, 13	Duckett	17, 20, 34, 37, 38, 39
Clifton	27		
Clothall	32	Eglebye	18
Clybourne	14, 38, 43	Elderton	6
Conyers	20, 42	Eldom	39
Corham	48	Ellerker	8
Cotton	34	Eltoft	2
Crakenthorp	7	Everard	37
Crofts	21	Evers	30
Cromer	33		
Curwen	9, 12, 13, 19, 23 26, 27, 28, 38, 39	Falconbridge	47
Cutler	14	Fallowfield	14, 38
		Farington	22
Dabridgecourt	20	Fenner	34, 35
Dacres	19	Filliol	7, 8, 13
Dalton	1, 26, 29	Fitz Williams	6
Dalston	5, 9, 40, 47	Fisher	49
Davenport	40	Fleming	1, 4, 14, 15
Dawson	9	Fletcher	14
Dawtre	35	Foljambe	36
Delheugh	42	Foster	4
De la Strange	50	Frickley	48
Delves	34		
Denton	2	Gage	34
Devenish	33	Gaith	6
		Gannock	31

	PAGE		PAGE
Gay	35	Jobson	1
Gibson	17		
Gifford	35	Keene	25
Gilpin	37, 45, 50	Kighley	12
Godmands	24	Kirkby	18, 39, 48
Goodere	13	Kirkham	18
Goodmonte	46	Kitson	21
Goring	37	Knipe	49
Gourney	49		
Graund	32	Lamplew	4
Graunson	16	Lankaster	17, 10, 13, 43
Gurling	37	Lassells	18, 21
		Latimer	9
Hall	47	Latus	47
Hamerton	18	Lauder	7
Harrington	15, 43, 44	Lawrence	23
Harrison	1, 25	Lawson	4
Harvey	32	Laybourne	11, 23, 38, 43, 47
Haston	26	Layton	10
Henley	34	Lewed	17
Heron	8	Lewknor	34, 39
Hill	34	Lockey	24
Hilton	6, 26	Lodington	31
Hodgson	43	Lownd	39
Holland	33	Lowther	38, 40, 42, 43
Hollyad	33	Lucy	13
Holt	2		
Hnddlestone	48	Maney	37
Hutton	22, 39, 45	Manser	16
Hynd	37	Markham	31

	PAGE		PAGE
Marley	30	Pratt	24
Martindale	8	Preston 12, 17, 19, 22, 27, 50	
Mason	34		
Mauleverer	26	Radcliffe	10, 40
Mawsatt	16	Redman	20
Medcalfe	17	Richardson	49
Midleton 1, 2, 6, 7, 14, 15, 16, 27, 28, 38, 39, 44		Richmond	13
Mohun	49	Ridley	6
Moore	16	Rocking	25
Morley	16	Rookby	44
Muschamp	36	Rodes	22, 23
Musgrave 9, 14, 15, 17, 27, 43		Roos	16
		Rosse	5, 28, 41
		Rowlandson	24
Newby	45		
Nicholls	25	Salkeld	4, 28, 38, 42
Nicholson	11	Sandford	7
Norfolk	19	Sandis	47
		Sands	11
Oliver	30	Sandys	3
Osbaldeston	23	Sarey	12
		Sennes	17
Palmer	33	Shaa	50
Penruddock	4	Shelley	33, 34, 35
Pennington	19	Sherborne	21, 23
Percy	50	Shipton	43
Perry	2	Shirley	32
Philips	19	Skipton	9, 20
Pickering	39	Smith	11
Pierpoint	26	Somerset	14

	PAGE		PAGE
Southworth	26	Wakeman	39
Springatt	34	Waley	35
Stanley	19, 22	Walton	45
Stanton	31	Warcop	6, 10, 19, 28 42
Stapleton	6	Ward	2, 8, 24, 49
Stankey	27	Warwick	4
Strickland	13, 42	Wastling	30
		Weaver	20
Talbot	23	Wells	35
Taylor	24, 37	Wettenhall	33
Thirkeld	3, 13	Westdy	20
Thornborough	6, 10, 12, 39, 46	Wharton	6, 9, 28, 43, 49
Thornhill	7	Whelpdele	3
Thwyngge	41	Whetstone	35
Tirwitt	32	Whittington	25
Tod	24	Williamson	3
Tomlinson	21	Wiltshire	32
Tunstall	30, 49	Wingfield	32
		Wivell	49
Vaughan	33	Wood	36
		Wraton	17
		Wright	25



4

THE  
TRUE USE OF ARMS.

BY WILLIAM WYRLEY.

REPRINTED FROM THE ORIGINAL EDITION, 1592.

LONDON :  
JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD ST. COVENT GARDEN.  
MDCCCLIII.





TO

William G. Turnbull, Esq., F.S.A. Scot.;

*Advocate, and of Gray's Inn;*

*Hon. Memb. of the Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle,  
and*

*Roy. Soc. of Northern Antiquaries of Copenhagen.*

*etc. etc.*

THE FOLLOWING REPRINT

IS INSCRIBED.



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE volume, whence "The Trve Use of Armorie" has been re-printed, consists of 162 pages, and is among the very scarcest books of the 16th Century. The first 28 pages are occupied by the following Treatise, which is the only important portion: the remaining ones contain two drawling poems: "The Glorious Life & Honorable Death of Sir John Chandos, Lord of St. Saluiour," &c., and "The Honorable Life and Langvishing Death of Sir John de Gralhy, Capitall of Buz." Neither of these appear to merit re-publication.

The author, William Wyrley, was a native of Staffordshire, descended from an ancient family seated in that County, as early as the reign of King Edward the 2nd. Anstis, Garter, says, "he published at London 1592, a learned Treatise of the True Use of Armory, in 4to., which some say was originally written by Samson Erdeswike, with whom he lived, which hath been re-printed by Sir William Dugdale. Anthony Wood acquaints us that Wyrley died about February 1617, but that seems to be a mistake, since John Guillim, Portesmouth Pursuivant



THE  
TRUE USE OF  
ARMORIE,

Shewed by Historie, and plainly proued  
by example: the necessitie thereof also discovered:  
*with the manner of differings in ancient time, the*  
lawfulness of honorable funerals and moniments: with other  
matters of Antiquitie, incident to the aduanc-  
ing of Banners, Ensignes, and marks  
of noblenesse and  
cheualrie,

*By William Wyrley.*



Imprinted at London, by  
I. Iackson, for Gabriell  
Cawood.

1 5 9 2.



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE  
THE LORDS AND OTHERS THE  
professors of martiall  
*discipline.*

NOBLES and Gentlemen, I will salute you with a Sentence of mine Author sir *John Froysard*, The aduentures of armes (saith he) are so diuers, and so far oftentimes beyond expectation, as that their effects causeth great admiration: which saying of his caused me with the more attention to read ouer his works, and finding the same most truly prosecuted through the whole course of his historie, but especially in the actions and aduentures of two famous Captains Sage and Imaginatiue, the one sir *John Chandos*, and the other sir *John Grayllie* by name (commonly called the *Captall de Buz*) it delighted me (as a louer of honor and cheualrie) to note downe their seuerall fortunes with some reasons of their falles, as men may gesse at the judgements of God, and hauing enterprised the publishing thereof, haue dedicated these my labors, such as they be, to your honorable societie: which doings of mine though they may seeme to some men friuolous and not worth your regard, yet doubt I



not but you shall finde matter of benefit valuable to the time you shall therein bestow, both by way of imitation and vertuous emulation, as being a subject that may stir your worthie endeouors to the honor of God, your dutifull seruice of hir Maiestie, the benefit of your countrie, and your owne eternall glorie. I haue been carefull to set downe (as my manner is) the Standards pennons, cote armours, and other marks of honor, to the end it may publikely be knowen of what necessitie the vse of them is (as being for that cause first ordeined) how and in what maner they are to be vsed, and to whom they do of right most chiefly and properly appertaine and belong. And these matters being well conceiued (as indeed without such tokens no martiall discipline can be exercised, no armie ranged, no attempt of any companie atchieued, and so (by consequence) no conquest made, nor so much as any Commonwealth (whatsoever) defended, neither from outward enimies, ciuill discord, nor the rebellion of any plebian rout, be the same neuer so simple, rude, or of small esteeme) it will (I hope) reduce into estimation a matter both of honor, order, and necessitie, which now (through the abuse thereof) is so far run into contempt, as that (of many men) it is holden for a thing of no price, but thought to be a very mockerie, and a matter of no other sequence, than to set vp vaine and fantasticall glorious fellows into a pride, and to drawe from them

some small summes to certaine persons into an office instituted. which no doubt was by the wisest and best gouerned states at the first deuised, and generally by all of any policie receiued to a most necessarie end: yet thinke they (as it is now in vse) it serueth but onely for that purpose. And indeed I must by the way complaine, that certaine of the said officers (or others pertaining to them) either for want of skill or maintenance, or otherwise for their gaine, haue committed faults not justifiable, whereby they haue brought a matter of great honor into defame, and injured thereby the Commonwealth, and brought both others that haue managed those affaires with more discretion, and themselues into obloquie. But these faults and errors, and some others also (spoken of in this dedication instituted to that purpose) will in the handling of this matter more easily appeere, and the thing be (I hope) reformed either by the good endeuors which the officers (vnderstanding thereof) will vse, or else by the magistrate, when he shall haue knowledge of such the abuses as he may be informed of. And first that Guydhomes ensignes and marks of armorie be of necessitie let it be but considered whether wars be sometimes of necessitie to be taken in hand or not, and surely I think there is none of so very mean capacitie, but will yeeld vnto it that they be: especially defensiuē and in some cases also offensiuē: which as a thing granted I will ouerpasse.

And then I say further, that wars being lawful and of necessitie, it must also be granted, that the same must be made by companies and bands of men, ouer which some must command, and the rest obey, and then will it follow, that for the ordering & diuiding of those to the best advantage, standards and banners must be allotted to euery companie, to the end they may draw together in their strength, and performe such actions as they shall be commanded, thus may you see the necessitie. And for the vse it doth also appeer, that sithence some must be commanders, it is of importance that they be known both by the persons ouer whom they command, & generally by al, and that so perspicuously that vpon euery sudden occurrent, the meanest & simplest common Soldier may thereby know euerie particular officer, and captaine that hath charge: for which purpose our ancestors deuise was, that such men should wear some such coate of marke ouer his armor, as whereby they might be easily discerned, to be the same persons which indeed they were: and where sometimes (when occasion so offered itselfe) they were forced to vse pauishes for their defence, whereby a great part of the marke which was vpon their vesture, was shadowed from light, it was thought necessarie that their markes should be also laide upon their shieldes: the commanders of horse-men (their faces being for the most part covered) they added to the crests of their

helmets some further distinction to be the better also knowen by : thus much for the ordinance and vse of armorie. And hereby also may it appeere to whom they do properly belong and appertaine, namelie, to King's, Princes, Archbishops, Bishops, Earles, Barons, Lords of prouinces and fees, Knights, officers in the Armie, Nauie or peece, and generallie to all that haue charge ouer bands and companies of soldiers. And now sithence from hencefoorth manie of my speeches will tend to the discouerie of such things as I take to be abused, erroneous, or faultie, wherein I may peraduenture not square in opinion with some others, and being my selfe no officer or of any authoritie, whereby, I should haue cause to deale in these affaires. I will therefore first beseech your honors and all others to whom it may appertaine, that if anie thing shall passe my pen which shall be offensiue, that they wil conceive no woorse of it then I meane, which is but to bring these matters of armorie into question, to the ende that if anie thing be amisse (as I for my part think manie things are) that then the same may be reformed ; but if happelie I mistake, that then it would please such as be of judgement or skill, to justifie the same as well done, and I shall most willinglie yeeld to authoritie and reason : and so not speaking but vnder correction, I saie that first I find (as I conceiue) some blame to be imputed in your selues which be professed

soldiers, that where your ancestors and al others general-  
 lie did in their standards, banners, and pennons shew  
 foorth to the viewe and face of the enemie, certaine faire,  
 ancient, and knowne marks, which their elders for the  
 most part had vsuallie before time carried, or at least  
 themselues had then taken (if they but then were in their  
 rising age) wherby their owne people were in a goodlie  
 and decent order conducted and led, and their enemies  
 verie much terrified, when they should see those marks  
 shewed foorth, the owners whereof had in their me-  
 mories by plaine feat of armes ouerthrowne their pa-  
 rents, or happely themselues, beaten them out of the  
 felde, razed down their castles and fortresses, sacked  
 their townes and cities, wasted and spoiled their coun-  
 tries, ransomed their people, and generally so daunted  
 and amazed them, that it was sometimes found to be  
 true, that verie bare names of some valiant persons ouer-  
 came whole armies. I cannot but blame you of all sorts  
 which shall make choise of banners (which you call  
 colors) so curtein like and so far from all due orders of  
 ancient bearing as may be, and for your parts which are  
 descended from ancestors of marke, I would be glad to  
 heare any reason from you, to what end you should lay  
 the same a side, and make choise of a curtein in the place  
 thereof. And you others (whose wisdome and value  
 haue gained you the reputation of a charge) I would

gladly also heare from what should moue you to be of that mind, as not to take some conuenient marke, such a one as may be thought meete by authority from you, whereby you may gaine an honor, both to your selues and your posterities, and by your good vsage thereof much enlarge the reputation, you haue by your valours obtained.

An other thing is amiss as I take it, and have great need to be reformed, is the quartering of many marks in one shield, coate, or banner, for sithence it is true that such marks serue to no other vse but for a commander to lead by, or to be known by, it is of necessitie that the same be apparent, faire, and easie to be discerned, so that the quartering of many of them together doth hinder the vse for which they are provided. As how is it possible for a plaine vnlearned man (who may be as good a soldier in some respects as the best) to discern and know a sunder, six or eight (what speake I of six or eight) sometimes thirtie or fortie seurall marks ilustered all together in on shield or banner, nay though he had as good skill as *Robert Glouer* late Somerset that dead is, and the eies of an Egle, amongst such a confusion of things, yet should he neuer be able to decipher the errors that are daily committed in this one point, nor discern or know one banner or standard from another, be the same hoeuer so large? So that except it be to be

made in a pedegree or descent to locke vp in an euidence chest, thereby to shew mens titles to their lands or the Alliances and kindreds of their houses, otherwise (as I say) I see not to any vse in the world they serue, specially so many together to be made vpon a mans vesture, target or banner, and therefore I could wish that euery man would content himselfe with his owne peculiar coate of name, and not to vse aboue one quartered therewith at the most: which one yet doth not so much trouble the capacitie of a man, but that he may both know and discern a banner or shield well ynough. And this one do I the rather esteeme well of to be borne, for that a Prince or Noble man making challenge or title to any Countrie (for which he is forced to make warres before he can obtaine it) it will be a goodly thing for him to shew forth his standard of the Armes of that Countrie quartered with his owne amongst those people which in reason and conscience owe him duety and obedience, to the end that they may thereby be the sooner induced to submit themselves to their true and Lawfull Soueraine, as his subjects. And for that cause (as I take it) King *Edward* the third and his valiant sonnes deuised and shewed foorth the Armes of France and England quartered together, and although my Author saith *Jaques Dartnell*, a honie trier of Gaunt was the first deuiser thereof, yet will I not beleeeue otherwise, but that the



principall reasons that led the king thereto, was to make knowne the justnes of his title to that kingdome where he then intended to make warres. But now it may be objected, sithence a Prince or great Lord may haue title to seuerall Countries, that therefore it is necessarie for him to beare all such tokens or marks as he hath title too : To this I answer, that although I could yeeld to them (but that it will bring the confusion aforesaid) yet is it of no such necessity, for that a man needs to shew his title onely to them whom he means to subdue : and if it should fortune that he had title to diuers and seuerall Countries, and that he would make warres to them all at once, yet should it not be needful to him to shew foorth any more marks quartered in one standard, but onely vnto euery seuerall countrie the Armes of that nation quartered with his owne. But this being the case of Kings and Princes, wherein (amongst others) our most famous, noble and worthy kings and princes of this land, haue shewed themselues most prudent and wise, to what purpose is it that others being but commanders vnder their prince, and which of themselues haue neither title to countrie nor are able to maintain wars, should in their princes seruice pester their banners and shields with such an infinite number as many do ? And in this point I cannot ynough commend the Baron of Stafford, who herein sheweth his great skill and temperance, for al-



though his Ancestors haue had title to quarter the marks of that valiant *Thomas* of Woodstocke (youngest sonne of king *Edward* the third) Earle of Buckingham and Duke of Glocester, of Bohune Earle of Hereford and Northanton and High Constable of England: and also of that great house of Somerset, which by their ancestor *John* Earle of Somerset, (younger sonne to *John* of Gaunt) descended from the same king *Edward* the third, (I omit to speake of diuers Barons and others of greate estate, whose heires both with revenue and honor enlarged greatly his family) yet the said Baron contents himselfe with the paternall marke of his house, and neuer so much as dreams of any other, far differing from a number of meaner persons, who if they possesse any mannor or lands by descent, albeit their ancestors married the heire of the same many hundred yeers agone, and whose parents peraduenture neuer did beare any marke, or if they did (time hauing obscured the same) it remaineth vnknown: yet shall you haue them run to an Herald or painter, as busily as if the matter were of weight, and there make search they know not for what, and the herald or painter (on the other side) to draw some small peece of siluer from them, will find out the badge of some one or other of the same name, although many times none of the kindred, and may be neuer came neare that country, and that will they inuest them as their owne, and sometimes

(when no marke for any of the name will be found) then devise some conceit or other, and say they find it borne by such a name, and content them wonderously therewith, which serues yet to no other vse, but to make up a iust number, whereby their owne marks become the more confused: and yet into this quartering (being a very fountaine of errors) many both Noblemen and Gentlemen, and the officers of Armes themselues, do oftentimes very rashly enter. It is not long sithence there died a knight in Staffordshire of good account, and (in his life time) was a deputie Lieutenant there, to doe his obsequie came an officer of Armes, who compiled for him nine seuerall marks all in one Escuchion, and yet neuer a one of them (as they were there set foorth) to him belonging, but his owne of name. And as I have giuen you this one for an instance, so almost can a man come into no towne of any account, nor almost into any Church or house of Nobleman or Gentleman, but he shall find errors, so that the numbers thereof be infinite: It were therefore to be wished that this matter of quartering should be reformed, as well for the vntruths therin committed, as for the titles that may be brought in question thereby to lands and Heritages: And as being one of the chiefest things that bringeth the honor of Armory into disgrace: for not long agoe heard I one speake in this maner, did I not (quoth he) know the grandfather of this

man (speaking of the owner of a scuchion wherein were quartered many marks) to purchase by plaine patent (although he neuer were man at Armes) both his coate and crest within these fortie yeers, and how comes it now to passe that I see his nephew inuested in all this Armorie? (numbring many and diuers seuerall deuices all in one shield by way of quartering) this being a very mockerie to see a man of no valure or estimation in warlike affaires, and the paternall Ancestors of whom (for ought that can be prooued) were not in any late age welders of Armes, to entrude themselues into so many badges of Armorie is not the least matter to bring into contempt an order so honorable and necessarie, as the bearing of Armes is.

Another matter that to my vnderstanding is also to be reformed, is the manner of differings, which are by the yoonger brothers and their posterities laid vpon their marks, being cressants, mollets, &c. and that such little ones, as that a man cannot discerne them a verie small distance from him, which differences are in reason to be made faire, plaine, and large that they may be also as easie to be discouered as any other deuise that is in the coate, shield, or banner, otherwise they serue not to the purpose for which marks were first ordeined. And the inconuenience which ensueth of this error will the more easily appeere, if I but set you downe the words of mine

Author (treating of an accident that happened in such a case) which be these: *Et feiss msr Robert Baileul aler sa Banniere tout deuant en escriant moriannes les Henuiers qui ia estoit esthauses Aperceurent la Banniere de moriannes qui encore estoit tout Droicte, si cuiderent que ce feust la leur ou il se deuoient radesser, car mult petite y auoit de difference de lune a l'autre, car les Armes moriennes sount Barres contre Barres d'Argent & d'Azure a deux Cheurons de Gueules, et le cheuron de msr Robert auoit vne petite crosete d'or, si ne l'aduiserent mye bien les hennuiers ainsi viedrent bouter de fait dessus la Banniere de msr Robert, si furent moult fierement reboutes et tous discomfis: For these henowers being led by sir William Baileul thought in the stir and busines to haue come to his banner hearing the surname of *Moriens* called vpon, and seeing as they supposed their captains ensigne, and the difference of sir *Robert*, being the yoonger brother, but a little crosse vpon the vpper cheuron they could not apperceaue, so that the most of them were either slaine or taken, and the elder brother the Knight their leader was glad to saue himselfe as well as he might: The Lord of *Cowcie* sonne in law to king *Edward* the third, suffered also reproch through the hard dealings of the Lord of *Chine* who raised his banner against certaine Englishmen of sir *Hugh Caueleys* company, being either the same that*

*Cowcies* was, or the difference so small as might not be discerned, whereby the said Lord *Cowcie* though he were absent as far as Austrich, had dishonor spoken of him as in the discourse of the Capitall I haue touched.

Thus then hauing shewed by example the harme and inconuenience that cannot but many times happen through the littlenes and nicenes of such differences, I haue thought it not amisse to laie before you the differings that antiquitie vsed, that by comparing them togither you may discerne the great wisdom of our ancestors and our owne imperfections in this point, for want of due consideration: which was done at the first by changing of the deuise borne into other colors onely, but when that would not suffice for the number of leaders (manie times of one house) then were they forced to varie their markes by adding of either bars, bends, cheurons, cheefes, quarters, borders, labels, losinges, or such like, and verie seldome should you see in those times cressant, mollet, or such like small little thing borne for a difference, and if anie did, yet was the same made so large and faire that it might be seene as well as any other the deuise which should be in the shielde or banner. And for the prooffe, I will giue you the example but of one house onelie for your better information (though I could do the like of manie others) namely that of the *Bassets*, who indeed (in my iudgement) varied their markes of honor verie finelie, and that vpon good respect:



And *Roger Basset* of Warwickshire varied from Drayton, changing the pals into blacke. (*Plate 2. Fig. 1.*)

But *Ralph Basset* (descended from *William Basset* Baron of Sapcote in Leicestershire, which *William* was *Iustice in itinere*, and yoongest sonne of *Richard Basset* and *Mauld Rydell*, his wife) (hauing no aduancement by the house of *Rydell*) detained vndie the deuise of the *Bassets*, and onelie changed the colors thereof into sileur and blacke : (*Plate 2. Fig. 2.*)

And Sir *Ralph Basset* of Chedle knight (a yoonger sonne of Sapcote) varied from that house, by adding to his deuise of waues, a red Labell, whereunto he was forced by reason the progenie of *Thomas Basset* had manie waies varied the saide vndie, by changing the color thereof. (*Plate 2. Fig. 3.*)

As *Iohn Basset* of North Luffenham in Rutlandshire bare it, varied into white and red : (*Plate 2. Fig. 4.*)

Fig.1.

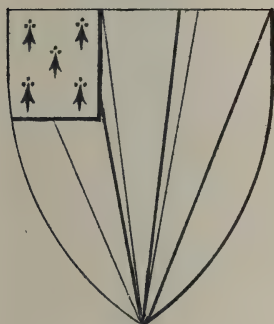


Fig.2.

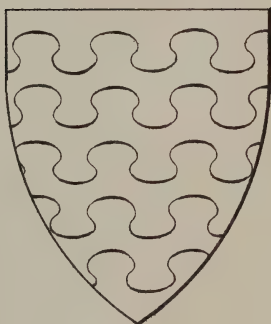


Fig.3.

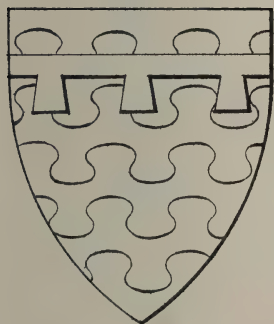


Fig.4.

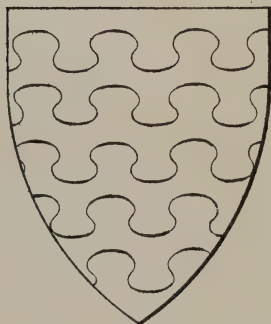








Fig. 1.

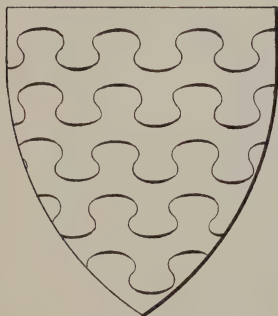


Fig. 2.

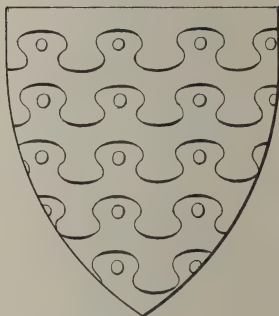


Fig. 3.

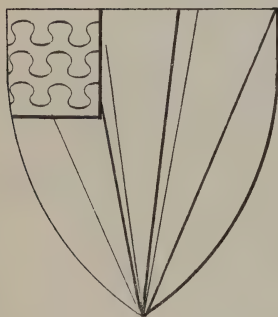


Fig. 4.



And *Allen Basset* Baron of Wicombe, differed this devise of vndie into white and blew, from whom the *Sanfords* descending assumed the same marke, and now *Browning* beareth it as being descended from an heire of *Sanfords*. (*Plate 3. Fig. 1.*)

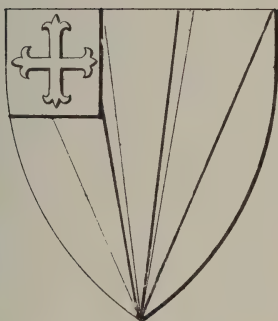
The house of Chedle yet after this diuiding it selfe into two branches, *Iohn Basset* of new place (being of the yoonger house) left the Labell, and charged the blacke vnds with manie besants dispersed all ouer them. (*Plate 3. Fig. 2.*)

But after all this (about the time of king *Edward* the third) the line of *Ralph Basset* of Chedle being extinguished: *Simon Basset* Baron of Sapcote (descended from the forenamed *William*) and sir *Iohn Basset* of Blore knight, (heire to the aboue named *Iohn Basset* of new place) both of them (I know not the cause why) at one instant (as I thinke) relinquished their devise of vndie, and inuested themselues into ridels: that is to say, *Simon* into the pals charged with a quarter varrie white and blewe, and sir *Iohn* into the same, with a quarter siluer, and a blacke Griffon thereon. (*Plate 3. Figs. 3 and 4.*)

And in Tamwoorth Church (neere to Drayton) well and olde there standeth gold three pals red, a quarter siluer and a crosse patie blacke thereon. (*Plate 4.*)

Thus haue I set downe vnto you (though something tediouslie) the vse that the antiquitie followed in a verie glorious line, for Lords, Knights and Gentlemen, which florished diuers hundreds of yeeres sithence, and you may see that these men (though they were manie of them great Barons) were not ashamed of their differences, but laide them foorth largely to the view, neither do I esteeme it a shame wherby any man should couet to hide the same, to be descended as a yoonger brother, sithence that euerie brother (hauing the like parents) is as well descended as the eldest, and therefore as good a Gentleman (though not so rich) as he. And the more is his honor, if without the helpe which by reason of his patrimonie the elder hath, he can aduance himselfe into place of office or dignitie, whereby he may raise an other flourishing familie of the same surname: And therefore you my masters that be yoonger brothers, neuer hide your differences by putting foorth a little cressant, or a peeping mollet, but vse some faire large deuise, sithence in truth your estimation is by your rising to be had in as good a regard as if you were the elder.

And now being in speech of yoonger brothers and their





differences, I haue obserued two kinds of them which the antiquitie vsed, (besides the aforesaid) one was, that such as were aduanced by Kings, Princes, or other great Lords, did manie times beare some part of the deuise of him who aduanced them, by way of addition vnto the marke of their owne familie, which serued verie aptlie to distinguish them from their elder house.

The other was, that diuers did adde unto the marke of their owne house, some part of the deuise of that familie from which their mothers descended, and both these two kinds of differings are (in my minde) greatly to be commended, not onely for that they may be made large and apparent, and for that cause serue very properly to the vse for which Badges are ordained, but also that the one makes manifest a grateful minde (in him that is aduanced) to his prince or lord of whom he receiued benefit, and by reason thereof linketh them together in a kinde of amitie, which seldome or neuer is worne out, and by that meanes a great strengthening it is vnto both houses.

The other not onely serueth to vnite the families which haue matched together in the foresaid loue and amitie, and thereby worketh the like effect, but besides it sheweth the certainty of the descending of the said yoonger brother out of both the said houses, and also giueth knowledge of the time thereof, whereby if any title of inheritance be at any time cast vpon the yoonger brother, either descend-



ing from ancestor of the fathers side, or mothers, it giues him a testimonie of his title, and witnesseth vnto the world the truth of his descent by the continuall bearing of that deuise, so that this kind may (many times) worke profit to the bearer, and auoid many troubles and sutes : and therefore into one of these kind of differings could I wish our yoonger brothers, which from hencefoorth shal be aduanced, to inuest them selues, as being both honorable, faire, certaine, and profitable. But now it may be objected that the order in vse sheweth plainly ynough the diuersitie of brothers, as the cressant a second, the mollet the third, that by this means the matters are made certaine : to this I answere, that first the time is not (by this means) signified, neither can it be known which of the Cressant bearers was the vnle or nephew. And further it is a very vsuall matter for euery new Riser at this day, if he can find that there is any of the like Surname that beareth marke, presently to usurpe the same with a Cressant or some such a difference, so that (for my owne part) I do seldome credit such kinde of differinges nor their bearers, vnles it be by some other testimony or prooffe made manifest, which cannot be counterfetted so well in the other deuise, except the riser should be thoroughly acquainted with the descent of him whose line he seeketh to intrude himselfe into, and besides, it may be the sooner espied by them of the true line & forbidden,

nor the other dare (for feare thereof) so soone venter the committing of a falsitie. But what a confusion is it when you shall see the second of a second brother, and sometimes an other second from him, to cluster one Cressant vpon an other, many times three or foure, one on horseback vpon an other, where as by the aforesaid bearing of the difference from the Prince, Lord, or mothers family, a man may better distinguish the brothers and set downe for a second, a third, a fourth, &c. And after from those againe, in a fairer, larger, and more apparent manner : And the more apt am I to speake against these ordinary differences (as they are called) knowing them to be but new inuentions, and any of them as ordinaries (in fashion as now they are) neuer vsed before the time of King *Henrié* the sixt, before which time men were much more warie and discreet in bearing of their marks, and in foreseeing that no intruders should enter into their families, nor that any should lay away or remoue their differings without speciall warrant or license of them that thereby might be preiudiced : for a Labell being much in vse for the heire apparent (to wear as his difference during his fathers life) was seldome remooued to the second brother, but when the inheritance went vnto the daughters of the elder brother, and then the second was permitted to beare the same for his difference, as being the heire male of his familie and as one that remained in

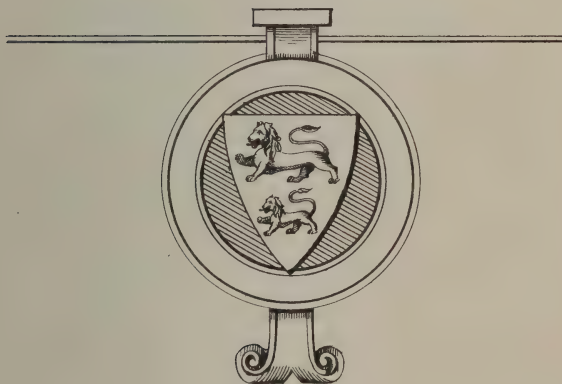
expectancie, yet might not the second brother vse to intrude himselfe into the absolute signes of his house (the inheritance being in his neeces or kinswoman) as appeared in the case betweene *Gray* of Ruthine and *Hastings*, which was this :

*John* Lord *Hastings* married to his first wife *Izabell* one of the sisters and heires of *Almerie de vallence* Earle of Penbrooke, by whom he had issue *John Hastings* (after Earle of Penbrooke) *Elizabeth* (married to *Roger* Lord *Gray* of Ruthin) and some other children which needs not to be spoken of, for that (as I take it) al the lines of them failed before the extinguishing of the line of the said *John* Earle of Penbrooke : after (such issue being had) the said *Izabell Vallence* died, and the said *John* Lord *Hastings* tooke to a second wife *Izabell* the daughter of *Hugh Spenser*, by whom he had issue *Hugh Hastings*, and *Thomas*, and then died, and left as heire *John* his son by his first wife (who was Earle of Penbrooke as I haue said, erected by reason of his mothers inheritance) which *John* Earle of Penbrooke married and had issue an other Earle of Penbrooke, but in the end all the line of the said *John Hastings* (first Earle of Penbrooke of that familie) fayling, there arose a question betwixt the heires of *Roger Gray* and *Elizabeth* his wife being sister (of the whole blood) and the heires of *Hugh Hastings* brother (of the halfe blood) to the said *John* Earle of Penbrooke,

for the inheritance of the *Hastings*. But *Gray* recovering the same (by the law that saith, *Possessio fratris de feodo simplici facit sororem esse hæredem*) called the said *Hastings* also (having remooved the difference of his marke for that he was then heire male of that house) into the Court of cheualry, and there having a iudgment against him, the said *Hastings* was compelled to vse a difference (which was a Label of silver) vpon his marke, a faire red sleeue of his Ladies vpon his golden vesture: Since which the heires of that yoonger familie have vsed the said Labell euen untill this onr age. So that you may see by this that the law was then taken to be such, that such an heire male as had not the inheritance of his Ancestors should not be suffered to beare his marke without distinction, for it should seeme (by this) that the issue of them that had married the heire generall of any familie (being by reason thereof possessed of the lands) had not onely an interest in the Armes, but might also forbid any man the bearing thereof: and moreouer it would also appeare that the law was then supposed to be such, that the owner of every marke might dispose of the same, as of his lands and inheritance, and that the *Donee* had power (by vertue of such gift) to vse the same as his owne proper Armorie, for I haue seene a deed importing thus much:

*A tous yceux qui Cestes lettres verrount ou orrount Thomas le fytz monsr Iohn de Herovill Chr. Salutz en deuyn Sachetz moy auoir done & Grauntte A Roger de Wyrley vn escquchoun darmes queil iamoy par descent apres le mort Iohn mone frere ceste a sauoir lesquchoun de sable ou deus leouns passantz d'argent Coronez et vnglez de or ou vne flour deliz de Azvre deuz pies Auzir & tenere A dit Roger & ses Heyrs a tous iours le auandit esquchioun a dit Roger Wyrley & ses Heyrs en Contre toutes Gens Garrantt: En temoignanc de quell Choses a Cestz escriptz ay meys mon Seall per yceux tesmoignes, Iohn de Bredwas, Roger Basset, Iohn de Herouile, William Herouile, Iohn Dimock, et autres Estptz a Westbromwich le mardy prochayn avant le Chaundelme lan du regne le roy Edward 3: puis le Conquest quarente vnsieme.*

And for prooffe that the saide grant was not made without warrant of law authorizing the same, the said *Roger Wyrley* although he and diuers others his ancestors bare other armes as proper to their owne familie long before the said time, as may appeere by diuers and sundrie peeces of euidence sealed with the same, dated many yeeres before this grant: yet did the said *Roger* vse and beare the said cote by *Heronvile* to him granted by





vertue of the said deed, after the same was to him granted, as by diuers seales and other moniments thereof may appeere, so that the vse concurred with the grant, and therefore not to be doubted but that the law did then take the said grant to be good and vailable. And for a further prooffe, amongst diuers I will giue you one other testimonie, and so leaue to trouble you any more in this point.

*A tous yceux qui Cestes presentz lettres verrount oïrrount moy Iean Downvill de modberlegh saluts en dieu : Come moy & Cecilie ma feme Auons ordegney que margerie nostre fille & les heyrs de son Corps engendres seruont enherites si bien de ma heyritage là dite Cecile & auer apres nostre deces come per fines leues en playn Countee de Cestre poetApparere plus apleyn. Sachent tous Gens qui p. celle cause & autres causes qui me moeuont ie a ville ordeigne doune & graunt p. ycestes qui Thomas de Holes fitz et Heyre Apraunt lauant dite mageri quile Thomas ie appelle & teigne mon fitz demesne eit & eniouse a luy & ses Heyres a tous iours mes entier Armes a porter & vser apres mon deces, dont les Colors sont Cestasauer le Chiffe d'azuré ove vne leon rampant d'argent ouesq vne collar de Gules : Et prie a dit Thomas & luy Charge sauoir ma beneson de poriere & vser les ditz Armes en la forme suys dtee : en Tesmoignaunce ce quil chose a cest*



*escrit ia y meïs mon Seale de les Armes Auant dites p.  
y cestes tesmoygnes : Edward le mascy Hue de Holes  
Thomas de Swettenham & Autres, done A modberleyh le  
darrey ioure de mars lan du Reigne le roy Richard 2 :  
puis le Conquest Sessime. (For Seal see Plate 6.)*

And this law (I thinke) was grounded vpon this reason, that forasmuch as euery tenant that held lands by a knights fee was tied to do his Lord escuage or shield seruice proportionable to the tenure he held, it is agreeable vnto equitie that he may giue or leaue his Armour to such a person, as he meaneth to make owner of his heritage, whereby he shall be bound to the same seruice that himselfe by the said law was charged to do, as hauing with the marke maintenance answerable thereto. And that this matter was of regard in my Authors time, it appeereth by the request both of sir *Iohn Chandos* himselfe, made to the Prince of Wales (as in the discourse of him I haue touched) and of sir *Thomas Triuet* (a gallant soldier of that time) speaking to the Earle of Buckingham, being rested before the citie of Troye in Fraunce, in this manner) the words of my Author concerning this matter be these : *Et msr Thomas Triuett apporta sa banniere toute enueloppe deuant le Countie de Bucquenham et lui dist monseigneur sil vous plaist ie desuelopperay aujourdai ma banniere car deu mercy iay asses de*





*reuenue pour maintenir estate comme a la banniere appartient : il noust plaist bien respondit le counte, &c.* so that by this the thing is manifested, for that the chiefest reasons wherby they thought to induce (the one) the Prince, and (the other) the Earle, to giue them leaue to raise their banners, was, that they had sufficient reuenue to maintaine the estate that to a banner did appertaine. And it may also appeere, that it is not necessarie for any to haue marks, but such as be warfaring men, hauing either reuenues to maintaine soldiers, or at least a charge, or some office pertaining to men at armes vnder their Soueraigne : which thing if it were performed according to reason, there should not need so many mollets and cresants for to distinguish yoonger brethren, for that none but such as medled with warlike affaires haue need of Armure, and they (I doubt not) would for their owne necessitie be forced to vse somemore large and apparent deuise than such little ones, as be now (of no value) in vse.

There is also another matter out of square, which is, that euerie man that obtaineth large possessions (whether the same be acquired by his iudgment in law, traffike in marchandize, or any other meane) yea although neuer any of his progenitors (from whom he can deriue himselfe) had the charge to lead men of armes, will yet at this day intrude themselues into the badges and marks of soldiers :

for although such as be descended from men of martiall discipline, have an interest in their ancestors marks (amongst other their goods) and therefore may shew forth the same to their predecessors glorie, and their owne (in respect of their descent) yet such men as rise by their sciences, iudgements, or skill in other arts, affaires, or trades (although they be to be reuerenced for their wisdom & praisefull actions, and had in honor answerable to their vertues and dignities) haue yet little to do with the marks or badges of soldiers. For although a reuerent Iudge that hath ministred law and iustice a long time (and that so long as that thereby to his great glorie) he hath obtained reputation, wealth, and reuenue, is to be had in high estimation, and in respect thereof to haue allowed him some note or marke of honor fit for his calling, yet (to my simple iudgement) the same should be disposed vnto him after the old Romane order by signifying the manner of his rising, rather than to put a corselet on his back, a burgonet on his head, a target on his arme, and a sword by his side, being things that would cumber greatly the good old man to vse, either for his owne defence, or but to shew (by way of triumph) for his glorie, sithence neither is it tolerable (by reason of his age) nor in his youth did he exercise himselfe in welding thereof. And as these things are vnseeming for him to weare, no more can I see any reason why he should deck vpon the

moniments of his house with such signes or tokens, except he can deriue himselfe from an ancestor that hath had the vse of such things, and then (to set them forth as a glorie to his deceased parent) will greatly augment the regard of his rising, which rising yet (of it selfe) is a sufficient honor, the same being by any iust, vertuous, or laudable meanes. And these new risings I could wish to be of more reputation than they seeme to be esteemed of, either by others, or themselues that so rise, as is apparent by manie of their dooings, who intrude themselues into marks of Antiquitie, and setting forth of descents, wherein they are yet faine many times either to counterfet, or else to deriue themselues from some poore parents, which they (either truly, or by surmize) alledge to haue descended from some ancient familie, and that haue been by some accident or other in former time decaied: wherein methinkes men do greatly mistake the matter, for that (in my opinion) a man that is but of meane parentage and riseth by commendable meanes, is equivalent to him that riseth from a decaied familie, namely when his said parent hath been ouerthrowne for offence, as many times they alledge (in plaine termes) which yet is to be vnderstood although it were neuer spoken of. for that God in his iustice (seldome I suppose) ouerthroweth any of estate, except for some great offence by some of the house committed, although (peraduenture) the same lies hid to

the world & appeereth not. But this being an argument that is daily in question amongst learned men, I will leaue to them to be discussed, and returne to my former purpose, which is, that I could wish euery man that raiseth a house by his good industry, should be honored with some such badge or marke, as should be answerable to the qualitie of his rising, and not euerie man of what condition soeuer they be, to entrude themselues into the signes and markes of soldiers, and such as follow the field with martiall exploits.

Some people also there are that be so precise, as that they do disallowe altogether the setting foorth of any memory of well deseruing men, which haue shewed themselves valiant either in the Act of Religion, their Princes seruice, or defence of their countrie, neither allowing their posteritie to set foorth any memorie of their praises, nor suffering any moniments or garnishments to remaine of their burials, as though it were a matter offensiue to God to haue goodmen well spoken of, or their valorous doings by their obsequies either reuerenced, or by anie records remembred: To such men I haue not thought it amisse to shew them their error by directing them to such places of Scripture as do not onely tolerate and allow of such actions, but also praise and commend the dooing thereof, and in some sorte charge and command the same to be done, wherby both they may (if they be

not obstinate) reforme their misconceaued opinions, and others may be fortified in their praisefull endeauours towards the honoring of vertuous and woorthie men, to the animating of posteritie to imitate their laudable actions, sithence indeed the chiefest matter that stirreth vp men to do well next their zeale to God, and the loue of vertue it selfe, is to thinke that not onely their soules shall be rewarded with the mercies of God, but also that their doings shall be had in a reuerent remembrance with the reports of all good men that shall speake of them: And first, that the vsing, bearing and setting foorth of Banners, Ensignes and markes of armorie are allowable by the sacred scriptures, it appeareth by the holie Evangelist Saint *Luke* recording the peregrination of Saint *Paul*, and speaking of armorie without reprehension (which he would not haue done had the vse thereof been offensive) in this sort:

*Post menses autem tres nauigauimus in naui Alexandrina, qua in insula Hyemauerat, cui erat insigne Castorum. (Act. Apost. cap, 28.)*

And in the booke of Numeri God by his prophet *Moses* commandeth his people of Israel to deuide and dispose themselues into companies by their Ensignes & Banners speaking vnto them in these words:

*Locutusque est Dominus ad Moysen & Aaron, dicens, singuli, per turmas, Signa, atque vexilla, & domos*



*cognitionum suarum, castrametabuntur, filiorum Israël per Gyrum tabernaculi fœderis. (Num. cap. 2.)*

So that by this you may see, that as these matters be no new inuentions of men, so they are also things allowable by the word of God.

Neither do obsequies or monuments ensuing woorthie acts want the authoritie of Scriptures, for in the booke of Numeri it is written thus :

*Cumque accessissent principes exercitus ad Moysen, & Tribuni, centurionesque dixerunt, nos serui tui recensuimus numerum pugnatorum, quos habuimus sub manu nostra : & ne vnus quidem defuit ob hanc causam offerimus in donarijs Domini singuli quod in præda auri potuimus inuenire, periscelides & Armillas, annulos & dextralia, ac murenulas, &c, Et susceptum intulerunt in Tabernaculum testimonij in monimentum coram Domino. (Num. cap. 31.)*

And in another place of Numeri thus :

*Locutusq est Dominus ad Moysen, dicens, præcipe Eliazaro filio Aaron sacerdoti, vt tollat Thuribula quæ iacent in incendio, & ignem huc illucque dispergat : &c. producatque ea in laminas, & affigat altari : &c. vt cernant ea pro signo & monimento filij Israel. (Num. cap. 16.)*

Also in the booke of Iosua I find these words :

*Et ait Iosue ad eos, ite ante arcam Domini Dei vestri*

*ad Iordanis medium, & portate inde singuli singulos lapides in humeris vestris, iuxta numerum filiorum Israel, ut sit signum inter vos: & quando interrogaverint vos filij vestri cras, dicentes, quid sibi volunt isti lapides? Respondebitis defecerunt aquæ Iordanis ante arcam fœderis Domini, cum transiret eum, idcirco positi sunt lapides isti in monimentum filiorum Israel usque in æternum. (Iosue lib. cap. 4.)*

And for the disposing of heritages it is written thus: *Homo cum mortuus fuerit absq filio, ad filiam eius transibit hæreditas, si filiam non habuerit, habebit successores fratres suos. quod si & fratres non fuerint, dabitur hæreditatem fratribus patris eius. sin autem nec patruos habuerit, dabitur hæreditas his qui ei proximi sunt. Eritque hoc filijs Israel sanctum lege perpetua sicut præcepit Dominus Moysi. (Num. cap. 27.)*

And for the collection of Genealogies thus saith God to Moyses and Eleasar: *Numerate omnem summam filiorum Israel a viginti annis et supra, per domos & cognationes suas, cunctos qui possunt ad bella procedere: &c. Ruben primogenitus Israel huius filius, Henoch, a quo familia Henochitarum: & Phallii, a quo familia Phalluitarum: & Hesron, a quo familia Hesronitarum. (Num. cap. 26.)* And for a further prooffe of the recording of Genealogies, it is to be considered how diligently the same hath beene obserued through the whole

course of the Scriptures, as the descents from *Adam* to *Noe*, and from *Noe* to *Abraham*, &c. do sufficiently testifie. And more that with the spirit of truth the Genealogie of Christ our Sauour and redeemer as concerning his humanitie is also by the writing of his holie Euangelistes most plainelie and sincerely remembred and set downe. All these things being therefore by the Scriptures of God, the decider of all controuersies, prooued and declared: Your Lordships may see that the bearing of Armes, raising and aduancing of Standerds, Banners and Ensignes, vsing of obsequies, erecting of moniments, enroling and regestrings of pedegrees and descentes haue ioyned to the auncient customes and Lawes both of this Land and all other nations, the authoritie of Gods word being very well accompanied with discretion, reason and iudgement, for God hauing by his sacred institution, ordeined Kingdomes, Prouinces, and Seignories, and that ouer them Kings, Princes and Magistrates, shall commaund, rule and gouerne his people, to the ende chiefly that his heauenly kingdome may be replenished with the blessed soules of his seruants, for the instructing whereof he hath also ordeined his holy Church, and the Bishops, pastors and ministers of the same, which Bishops and other spirituall officers cannot so wel enforme his Christian people without the aid of the said Kings and temporall Lords: neither can they gouerne their particular Countries

either from the inuasion of outward tyrants or inward rebels, but through the vse of their sword of iustice, which sword cannot be exercised against vnruely persons being of strength wanting men skilful in Martiall Discipline, who cannot manage those affaires but by meane of the aforesaid Armes and ensignes, in maner as before I haue more largely expressed : And in like sort as Princes, great Lords, Iudges, Magistrates and Gouvernors, do vse to weare sacred Robes of gold, purple, scarlet, and other ornaments and apparell, not to take pride in, or for any vaine ostentation or show, but onely that they may be distinguished from the inferior people, to the end that a reuerent regard may be had of them in respect of the high office which vnder God here on earth they beare. And as these things no man of any reason will gainsay, so I see not but as wel may their iust vertues and good gouernment be remembered with funerals, obsequies, and monuments, after their decease, whereby such as succeed in gouernment may also be had in more high estimation, and a faire example is thereby given them to imitate the regiment of their predecessors. Likewise doth the registering of descents carrie with it reason ioined to authoritie and custome, for as by Gods lawe there is commanded a priuiledge of enheritance to the first begotten of Israell, and so for want of sonnes to the females, and from them to others answerable to the proximitie of their

blood and kindred, which with our lawes of this land, and of most nations do concur and agree, it doth well stande with peacefull gouernment for the auoiding of contentions which may rise for want of records, to testifie the truth of mens titles to their enheritances, that Genealogies and Pedegrees should be enrolled and kept in remembrance.

I haue my good Lords stood the longer vpon this point, for that of late traueling through some countries of this Land, and hauing a desire to see the moniments of antiquitie which haue remained in such places as I passed by, for which cause as otherwise I many times resorted to Churches and other houses to satisfie my affection, I found that many moniments both of burials and in glasse were so broken and defaced, that vneth may be had any knowledge what the fragments remaining did signifie: and enquiring of the inhabitance how it came to passe that those things were so blemished, they made report that certaine persons, delighting as may seeme in noueltie, for they can abide no marke of antiquitie, had defaced the same. These men that take vpon them to be reformers, whose desires are great through the singularitie & pride they haue in their owne wits and vnderstandings, weening themselues to be very wise, where indeed they are verie simple, and onely look but into the abuses of things, and do not see into the grounds & depths of the reasons and causes for which good ordinances were made,

go about to finde faults, where many times none are, but if peraduenture they hap to finde an ordinance well made misused, then streight neuer seeke they to reforme the abuse, but by their wils, downe goeth ordinance and all, such is their insolencie, rashnes, and want of iudgement. It were well done therefore my good Lords, and I could wish 'that your Honors hauing somtimes accesse to hir Maiestie, and oftentimes conference with my Lords of hir priuie Councell, should enforme hir Highnes, and their Honors of the said abuses committed, and to be thereby a meane that these simple fellowes taking vpon them to be reformers, might be reformed themselues, and both kept from destroieng of good ordinances, and be punished for their offences in that behalfe committed. In the meane time yet shall I desire that Honorable personages will looke better to the moniments of their ancestors, by correcting the destroyers thereof, and therein to imitate the laudable actions of *William Fleetwood*, Serieant at the Law, and Recorder of the Citie of London, who being commissioner amongst others for the visitation of causes Ecclesiasticall, by the Princes authoritie, by vertue thereof imprisoned certaine wilfull persons that had defaced the moniment of Queene *Katherine Dowyger* at Peterborough, vntil such time as they had reformed the same, which thing was through his good endeuor reedified and perfected againe, and so remaineth to this daie: for

although some happily see standing those of their owne parents, yet it were good they should foresee that no others be pulled downe, for that there is not to be looked for but that suffering such iniuries to rest vnpunished, the dooers thereof will in time growe more insolent, and haue a cast to ouerthrowe theirs also.

And now being in speech of moniments, I cannot but remember their ignorance who make small account of anie ancestour except before the Conquest, weening that all that lie crosse-legged so were: and that all ancient euidence without date is the like: whereas the one was not had in use vntil after the Palestine wars, and the other, such as be sealed, be also since the Conquest, for I could neuer see nor heare of any that had seene sealed deed, but the same was made sithence the Conquest of this Land, when the vse (as I take it) of sealing with waxe first began in England.

But these men will not stoupe one iote vnder the Conquest, telling manie fables of their ancestors then preserving their houses, Honors, & Armories, forgetting quite that it is much more glorious and honorable to be descended from a most famous nation conquering, then such people by plaine feate of Armes subiuged, for as the Poet saith,

*quis enim sua prælia victus*

*Commemorare velit? referam tamen ordine, nec tam  
Turpe fuit vinci, quam contendisse decorum est,  
Magnaque dat nobis tantus solatia victor.*



So that if they haue any thing praiseworthy left to brag of, it is that they well contended with so puissant conquerors, which were then in their time as wise, glorious and famous a nation as were in the whole world to be found.

Another sort there be not much more skilfull, who if they see any Armorie, straight enter into the comparison of the fairenes thereof: and foule and false is it, if mettall lie vpon mettall alone, or colour vpon colour: And yet I could wish we should neuer haue more dishonorable men nor woorse soldiers than haue so borne their Armorie: for to omit that woorthie *Godfrey*, and that *Mack Morise* king of Lymster in Ireland, whose onely daughter and heire was married to *Richard Strongbowe* Earle of Pembroke, and bare in a blacke shield a red ramping Leon, of our owne sir *Richard Sandbach* of Sandbach in Cheshire, sir *William Wakbirge* of Wakbirge in Darbyshire, two valiant Knights, yet both bare colour upon colour. Passing the number of examples, I will onely recite the words of mine Author speaking of the aduentures of a braue Knight in the companie of sir *Robert Canole* resting by Parris, this Knight hauing vowed to strike with his launce on the barriers of the citie, performed it, and then the words be these: *Celluy cheualier ie ne sca comment il auoit nom ne de quel pays il estoit mais s'armoit a gueulles a deux fousces noyeres et vne bordure noyre*



*non endente.* And although I grant they be not so well to be discerned, as when mettall and colour be varied the one with the other, yet sithence the number be great of most worthie men that haue borne their armes in such maner, I will esteeme their marks as honorable as the rest, and neuer impute any falsitie to them. And this kinde of men also commonly descant vpon the proportion, nature, and qualitie of the deuise, as if the name of *Richard* were better than *Robert*, and *Ralph* better than *Roger*, and in their conceits the Eagle or Faulcon are the fairest birds to be borne of all fethered foules, and so of other the like: when indeed except for the reuerence due to the bearers, who do honor their bearings by their renownme, vertue, and valure, otherwise there is no difference in the fairenes of marks: but that those onely are to be preferred which be easiest to be perceiued, discerned, and knowen to be the same things they be marked out for: And therefore the Capitale of Beulz blacke *Midas* head with his faire long Asse eares was as good a crest, as sir *Iohn Chandos* chiftains head proper in a white scarffe goodly enuellopped: and as faire a cote is *Hopwells*, being three red hares playing on bagpipes in a siluer shield, as *Newinton* which bare d'Azure three eglets d'argent displaied. And now me thinks I heare some that esteeme me to mend, and become more fine, skilfull, and Herauld like in my emblazons, as vsing the

French phrases of *d'azyer* & *d'argent*, who thinke I doubt not, but that I haue committed a great error for want of vsing the said French phrases in my emblazons, notwithstanding I will ioine in opinion with such as esteeme it to be more proper to speake and vse English termes and phrases in an English booke dedicated to Englishmen, than French or Latine, otherwise than cited authoritie leadeth.

And now my good Lords, and you braue Soldiers and Gentlemen, I haue little else to trouble you with at this time, but to wish you had no woorse a writer to eternize your fame then mine Author sir *Iohn Froissart* was to the Knights, and Captains of England your predecessors, and to craue your patience in that I haue been so vnaduised to molest you this long with these tedious and simple trauels of mine, caused through the great zeale and affection I beare to your praiseable profession, and that you would pardon my boldness in the writing and dedicating thereof to your Honors: neuerthelesse, I beseech you again sithence they entreat of matter tending to the aduancement of your glories, that you would vouchsafe to accept of them in good part, and with the shields of your woorthie fauors to protect them from the outrage of such as enuie your memorable vertues, praieng to God that all your noble atchiuements may be with no lesse praise remembred, then our knights of that time were spoken of

by sir *Arnold Danderhen* martiall of France, there enemie to King *Henrie* of Castile the valiant bastard, a little before the battaile of Naueret, and because at my first entrance into this matter, I saluted you with a sentence of mine author, I haue thought it no bad *Decorum* with his report of those speeches being as followeth, to take my leaue. *Sire sire saulue soit uostre Grace* (saith he) *vos dy que quant par bataille vous assembleres au Prince vous trouueres la gens d'armes tels comme il les fault trouuer car la est la fleur de tout Cheualrie du monde, & la trouueres durs sages Combatants & a bonnes certes & ia pour mourir plain pie nen fuiront, &c.*







TO  
THE PRESIDENT AND MEMBERS

OF

*The Chetham Society*

THIS TRACTATE

IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED BY

JOHN GRAY BELL.



## PREFATORY REMARKS.

---

THE CHESTER CONTROVERSY, as it is generally termed, is one of the most curious instances of genealogical altercation on record ; and it is remarkable that, while so many reprints of less interest have been produced, the series of tracts which set forth the views of the sturdy disputants should have been permitted, in consequence of their exceeding rarity, to remain inaccessible to the many who take an interest in such questions. The Editor, several years ago, suggested to his friend, the late Dr. Hibbert Ware, that a re-issue, competently revised, naturally fell within the scope of the Chetham Society (the best conducted of all such literary associations), and he understood from that gentleman, that the council were not indisposed to consider the proposition. Since, however, it has not yet been acted upon, he has thought it not inexpedient to commit to the press an unpublished "further rejoinder" in this conflict of family pride, so that the few fortunate possessors of those already printed may be enabled to add to their set of the pamphlets this final Reply of Sir Thomas Mainwaring.

The present limited impression is taken from the transcript by Cole, contained in the fortieth volume of



that indefatigable copyist's collections in the British Museum (Addit. MSS. No. 5841, fol. 125-140), wherein he records it as "*Trascritto questo di ventesimo settimo di Maggio, 1762,*" and thus prefaces it:—

"Meeting with the following MS. in 8vo., containing 87 pages, wrote in a fair neat hand, of King Charles the 2nd's time, among the late Sir John Crew of Utkinton's papers, and lent to me by Mr. Allen of Tarporley, in Cheshire, I was disposed to copy it, as it says in the title-page that it was never published, and as Ant. Wood, in the articles of Sir Peter Leicester and Sir Thomas Mainwaring, takes no notice of it. It is wrote so neat and fair, with a regular title-page, that it looks as if it was designed for the press, and is probably in Sir Thomas Mainwaring's own hand."

In reference to these Crewe papers, Cole has made the following note in his copy of the first edition of Gough's "*British Topography*" (*Nichols's Lit. Anecdotes*, ii. 694).

"I have, in my thirty-fifth volume of MS. collections many particulars relating to *Cheshire*, taken from the papers and observations of Sir John Crew,\* of Utkinton, in the parish of Torporley, who was an excellent antiquary; they were communicated to me by my worthy

---

\* Sir John Crewe, of Crewe Hall and Utkinton, son of John Crewe, Esq., of Crewe Hall, by Mary, daughter and coheir of Sir John Done, of Utkinton Hall, married Mary, daughter of Thomas Wagstaff, Esq., of Tachbrook, co. Warwick, collateral ancestor of the present Baron Crewe. — *Collins's Peerage*, by Brydges, ix. p. 355.

and honest friend, Mr. John Allen, now Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and rector of Torporley, a gentleman whose taste and abilities in the same studies are very eminent. His collections for his native county of Stafford were large: these he gave to Dr. Wilkes, of Wolverhampton, who was meditating a history of that county; and I am afraid they have fallen since into worse hands."

Rawlinson (*English Topographer*, p. 25) says: "Upon account of some passages in this book (the *Historical Antiquities*\*) was commenced an historical contest between Sir Peter and his cousin, Sir Thomas Mainwaring, which ended not till Sir Peter died at Great Budworth, in this county, the 11th of October, 1678, in which church he was interred. Most of the pieces wrote by the two parties are as follows." After enumerating *eight* of these, ending with No. 13 of our list, he continues: "Upon this momentous controversy a ballad was made, which very much ridiculed it; and the last piece was sent, by Mainwaring, to Leycester's executors, a few days after the demise of the latter, with a desire to know whether they would continue this controversy; but they prudently let it

---

\* Historical Antiquities, in two books: the first treating in general of Great Britain and Ireland; the second containing particular Remarks concerning Cheshire, faithfully collected out of Authentick Histories, Old Deeds, Records, and Evidences, by Sir Peter Leycester, Baronet. Whereunto is annexed a Transcript of Doomsday Book, so far as it concerneth Cheshire, taken out of the original Record. London, 1673. Folio.

drop." This, however, as may be seen by No. 14, and the tract now first printed, Sir T. Mainwaring did not do,—pertinaciously resolved to have the last word.

---

*The following are the Titles of the several Pieces which compose the Collection :—*

\*1. A Defence of Amicia, Daughter of Hugh Cyveliock Earl of Chester ; wherein it is proved, that Sir Peter Leycester, Bart., in his book entitled, *Historical Antiquities*, in two books : the first treating of Great Britain and Ireland ; the second containing particular Remarks concerning Cheshire, hath without any just Grounds declared the said Amicia to be a Bastard. By Sir Thomas Mainwaring of Peover, in Cheshire, Baronet. London, 1673. 12mo.

\*2. An Answer to the Book of Sir Thomas Mainwaring of Peover, in Cheshire, Baronet, entituled, *A Defence of Amicia, Daughter of Hugh Cyveliock, Earl of Chester*, wherein is vindicated and proved, that the Grounds declared in my former Book, concerning the Illegitimacy of Amicia, are not evinced by any solid Answer or Reason to the contrary. By Sir P. Leycester, Baronet. A.D. 1673. 12mo.

\*3. A Reply to an Answer of the Defence of Amicia, Daughter of Hugh Cyveliock, Earl of Chester. Wherein it is proved that the Reasons alledged by Sir P. Leycester in his former Books, and also in his said Answer concerning the Illegitimacy of the said Amicia, are invalid and of no weight at all. By Sir T. Mainwaring, of Peover, in Cheshire, Baronet. London, 1673. 12mo.

4. Addenda : or some Things to be added to the former Answer to Sir T. Mainwaring's Book ; to be placed immediately after page 90. Nov. 1673. 12mo.

5. An Answer to Sir Peter Leycester's *Addenda, or some Things to be added in his Answer to Sir Thomas Mainwaring's Book*, written by the said Sir T. Mainwaring. London, 1673-4. 12mo.

\*6. Two Books, the first being styled, *A Reply to Sir Tho. Mainwaring's Book, intituled An Answer to Sir P. Leycester's Addenda*. The other styled *Sir T. Mainwaring's Law Cases Mistaken*. By the said Sir P. Leycester. *Anno Domini* 1674.

7. An Answer to Two Books, the first being styled, *A Reply to Sir T. Mainwaring's Book, intituled An Answer to Sir P. Leycester's Addenda*. The other styled, *Sir Thomas Mainwaring's Law Cases Mistaken*, written by the said Sir T. M. London, 1675. 12mo.

8. A Reply to Sir T. Mainwaring's *Answer* to my two books, written by Sir Peter Leycester, Baronet. *A.D.* 1675. 12mo.

9. The Second Reply: together with the Case of Amicia truly stated. London, 1676. [By Sir P. Leycester.]

Of this pamphlet, Sir P. Leycester's own copy, containing many MS. notes and emendations by him, is amongst Gough's books in the Bodleian.—Moule (*Bibl. Heraldica*, 191), who also informs us that the two following tracts were printed, but that their titles only are known:—

10. "Peroratio ad Lectorem." By Sir P. Leycester. Dated Dec. 17, 1675.

11. "An Advertisement to the Reader, by Sir P. Leycester, unanswered." *No date*.

12. An Admonition to the Reader of Sir P. Leycester's Books, written by Sir T. M. 1676. 12mo.

13. An Answer to Sir T. Mainwaring's Book, intituled, *An Admonition to the Reader of Sir P. Leycester's Books*, written by the same Sir P. Leycester. London, 1677. 12mo.

It was to this pamphlet, of which the original MS. is amongst Gough's books in the Bodleian, that the Reply, now for the first time printed in the ensuing pages, was penned.

\*14. The Legitimacy of Amicia, Daughter of Hugh Cyveliock, Earl of Chester, clearly proved, with full Answers to all Objections that have at any time been made against the same. By Sir Thomas Mainwaring, of Peover, in Cheshire, Baronet. London, 1679. 12mo.

The whole of these tracts, each of which is of excessive rarity, are in the library of George Ormerod, Esq., LL.D., the Historian of Cheshire (his own work being now rare, and of high cost). Those marked \* are in possession of the Editor. A very complete set (if not entirely so) was in the rich genealogical and heraldic library of the late Lord Berwick.

---

Concerning this resolute controversy, the learned historian of Cheshire, Dr. Ormerod, remarks :—"It would be vain to attempt to give, within the limits of this work, any view of the arguments produced on the two sides, relating wholly to the most abstruse points of law in a dark and distant period. Sir Thomas Mainwaring, in his first book, states that he should have rested satisfied if Sir Peter Leycester had spoken of the matter as an uncertainty ; and Sir Peter Leycester in his reply states, that if he had known this to be the case, he should certainly have gratified him. All that Sir Thomas Mainwaring avows himself to contend for, was that his ancestress was issue of Earl Hugh by a first marriage, and that he was therefore entitled to quarter the arms of that earl by ordinary usage, in consequence of the failure of his issue male, although the said Amicia could not in any way be considered as a coheir of the lands of the earldom with her half-sisters, who were of the whole blood to Earl Randle III. The disproportion of Amicia's marriage, when compared with those of her sisters, is in some degree done away with, by considering

that they took place at a much later period, after the decease of her brother without issue ; a degree of intimacy is also proved between the Mainwarings and the family of their lord prince, beyond what an illegitimate connection would seem to warrant ; and it is observable that after his marriage Ralph Mainwaring signs immediately after the earl, taking precedence of the barons of the palatinate, both before and after his resignation of the justiceship. The essential question relative to the probability of giving lands in frank marriage with a bastard, was long argued with great ability on the part of Sir Peter Leycester ; but some of his arguments are ascertained to rest on the authority of incorrect transcripts, and it is probable that few will read the last book of his opponent, which sums up the various arguments, without allowing the victory to Sir Thomas Mainwaring. The opinions of the greater part of (if not all) the judges who were consulted, were given in favour of Amicia's legitimacy,\* and the authorities of the College of Arms have also been in her favour, under the express sanction of Sir William Dugdale."—*History of Cheshire*, i. 31.

The impression of this Tract is limited to One Hundred copies.

W. B. T.

---

\* [Wood says, "At an assize held at Chester in 1675, the controversy was decided by the judges itinerant, who, as I have heard, adjudged the right to Mainwaring."—*Ed.*]





# A REPLY

TO

SIR PETER LEICESTER'S ANSWER,

&c.

---

SIR PETER LEICESTER, in his answer to my book entituled An Admonition to the Reader of Sir Peter Leicester's Books, would willingly clear himself from that partiality, and those omissions, uncertainties, and mistakes which I there charge him with.

But he is not able to free himself from them, or any of them, as will hereafter appear ; For as to the first, though he pretends he was impartial in calling Odard (who is mentioned in Domesday Booke) the undoubted auncestor of the Duttons, whereas he called Ranulphus, who is also mentioned in the said Domesday Book, but the supposed auncestor of the Mainwaring's, for some reasons which he pretents to give in his Answer to my Admonition, yet I think they are such as will make his partiality in this particular to appear more clearly then it did before ; For whereas he tells us of a record, in the 117 page of his great book, sub anno 1119, in which are these words : Willielmus Constabularius dedit Newtonam simul cum servitio Hugonis filii Udardi de quatuor Bovatis ; And whereas he also supposeth this



Hugh son of Hodard, to be Hugh Dutton, son of Hodard Dutton, both in the 250 and 264 pages of his said book, and cites the said record, and the said two pages of his said book, in the 3 page of his Answer to my Admonition, in such a manner as an unwary reader may easily take them for three several proofes ; whereas it is but one single record ; So, on the other hand, the said record is not such an undoubted prooffe as he supposeth it to be ; for, as he says, it is not absolutely certain that Richard Mesnilwaren, or Mainwaring, who succeeded the said Ranulphus, was son of the said Randle, because we do not find the express words Richard Mesnilwarin, son of Ranulphus ; so I doubt not but the judicious reader will easily observe that the aforesaid record doth not say cum Servitio Hugonis Dutton filii Udardi ; nor cum Servitio Hugonis filij Udardi Dutton ; but cum Servitio Hugonis filij Udardi ; so that it is possible that the aforesaid Hugh son of Hodard might be an Hugh that was sonne to another Hodard, and not sonne to that Hodard who held some part of Dutton, and was mentioned in Domesday Book : And whereas he calls him whom he placeth as the 3d Dutton of Dutton, thus, viz., Hugh de Dutton, son of Hugh, son of Hodard ; he must give me leave to believe he cannot shew me any deed or record of that age which doth mention that Hugh de Dutton to be Hugh son of Hugh, son of Hodard, as Sir Peter there doth ; and if he cannot bring any such prooffe, it is possible that the said Hugh de Dutton (the 3d person which he there mentions)

might be owner of those lands which Odard held in the Conqueror's time, either as heir to him by an heir female, or else by purchase, and yet call himself Hugh de Dutton, from the place where he lived ; it being, as Sir Peter hath often confessed, very usuall for persons in those ages so to do.

Yea, but says Sr. Peter, the antient roll of the barons of Halton, which I have seen and transcribed in one of my manuscripts, noted Lib. C. 84. 85. (which roll seemed to be written in a character of 300 years standing at the least), sayth, that ab ipso Hudardo venerunt omnes Duttonienses: see also Monasticon Anglicanum, Vol. 2. p. 187. and also p. 249. of my book ; but I never knew or heard of any such ancient roll or record wherein it is said, ab ipso Ranulpho venerunt omnes Manwaringi. To which I answer, first, that the said roll mentioned in Sir Peter's said MS., and that in the 187 page of the 2d vol. of the said Monasticon, and that which he speaks of in the 249 page of his said book, are but one and the same thing, unless there be some small circumstantiall differences in them, occasioned by the often transcribing or negligences of some clarkes, who did write the same ; and yet they are here so expressed by Sir Peter, that an incautelous reader may through inadvertency take them to be three severall proofes.

Secondly, Sir Peter, in his 4th page of his Answer to my Admonition, says he never knew nor heard of any such ancient roll or record wherein, *Note*, it is said ab ipso Ranulpho venerunt omnes Manwaringi: By

which expression, those readers who are not intelligent may perhaps take that for a record in which it is said, *ab ipso Hudardo venerunt omnes Duttonienses* ; whereas it is only a thing written by some private unknown person, and hath several apparent falsities therein, as will herein hereafter appeare.

Thirdly, whereas that roll sayes *ab ipso Hudardo venerunt omnes Duttonienses* ; that may be very true, and yet, for all that, it is possible that Hugh de Dutton (the third person mentioned by Sir Peter in the pedigree of the Duttons) might descend of an heir female of the said Hudard, and he and all his posterity take the name of Dutton from the name of the place where they lived, which was very usual in these elder times, as hath been observed before by me, and as Sir Peter doth acknowledge in many places in his *Historical Antiquities* and elsewhere.

Fourthly, Sir Peter says that the said roll which he transcribed as aforesaid, seemed to be written in a character of 300 years standing at the least ; by which an unskilful reader may perhaps think that the roll itself was much older, and that the roll which Sir Peter saw, might be but a copie, whereas the original itself was not made before the 22d year of King Edward the 3d, being the year 1348, as you may see in *Monasticon Anglicanum*, Vol. 2. p. 190. the said roll ending thus : *Et sic hæreditas Dominorum de Lacy in comitatu Eboracensi, Lincolniensi, Lancastriensi, et Cestrensi, et in pluribus aliis locis Regni, a nomine posteritate Dominorum de Lacy, usque ad hæredes*

Edmundi Comit̃s Lancastriæ prædicti est finaliter jam translata, tempore videlicet Edwardi Regis tertij post Conquestum, et anno regni sui vicesimo secundo. Now, how a roll written by an unknown person, in the 22d year of K. Edw. 3. (who was the 11th king of England after the Conquest) can be an undoubted prooffe of those persons who lived in, or near to the time of the Conquest, let any indifferent and learned person judge, and especially when it doth not name any one man who was the posterity of the said Odard.

Fifthly, the said roll doth apparantly shew itself to be of no credit at all; for as you may see in Monast. Anglic. Vol. 2. p. 187. 188. it says, that William Constable of Cheshire, son of William, and the 3d Baron of Halton, died without issue, and left two sisters to be his coheirs, to witt, Agnes and Matilda; and it says that a knight, whose name was Eustace, married the said Matilda, and had issue by her a son named Richard; and that Aubertus Grelly married the said Agnes. The words of the said roll are these: Et iste Willielmus filius Nigelli, fundator dictæ domus, obiit et sepultus est apud Cestriam, cui in hæreditate successit filius ejus Willielmus junior, qui prædictis canonicis dedit in Excambium alias terras pro terra sua de Runcorne, et aliis terris suis, scilicet ad Northonam villam transferendo prioratum antedictum; et iste Willielmus obiit in Normannia, unde venerat avus suus, et non reliquit hæredem de corpore suo, sed habuit duas sorores, scilicet Agnetem et Matildem,

inter quas divisa fuit hæreditas Honoris de Haulton. Matildem desponsavit quidam Miles Eustachius nomine, qui fuit postea interfectus in Wallia. Et Aubertus Grelly duxit dictam Agnetem uxorem. Eustachius vero prædictus antequam interficeretur, cum dicta Matilda habuit filium, qui vocabatur Ricardus. Et iste Ricardus duxit Sororem Roberti de Lacy, quæ vocabatur Aubrey Lysours, de qua genuit duos filios, scilicet Johannem Constabularium, fundatorem domus de Stanlowe, &c. ; whereas Sir Peter Leicester, in his *Historical Antiquities*, p. 266. tells you that the said Agnes (not the said Matilda) was second wife of Eustace Fitz-John, and that Richard (afterward Constable of Cheshire) was their eldest son, and for that he quotes the said 2d vol. of *Mon. Angl.* p. 798. 799. wherein you may find two deeds verbatim set down amongst others ; in the first of which the said Eustace calls Agnes his wife, and in the 2d (which is there said to be in the custody of Sir Wm. Constable of Flemburgh, in Yorkshire, Baronet) the said Agnes calls herself daughter of Wm. Constable of Cheshire, and there also speaks of Eustace her husband, and Richard her son. But Sir Peter Leicester takes no notice of this great mistake in that roll ; for if he had, the mistake being so grosse, it would have taken away the credit of that roll, and then there would have been an end of the argument brought from ab ipso Hudardo venerunt omnes Duttonienses. But here is another great mistake in the said roll, and that Sir Peter himself, in the 269 page of his *Historical Antiquities*, doth take

notice of; for he observes that it is said in the said roll, that Maude de Clare, wife of Roger Lacy, was sister of the Treasurer of York Minster; whereas Sir Peter there tells you Bevoys de Clare, Treasurer of York Minster, had no sister called Maude, for all the sisters are punctually reckoned up in the book of Tewksbury, as you may find them copied out by Vincent in his corrections of Brook's Catalogue of Nobility, p. 221. whereby it appears plainly that those sisters were all born after the death of Roger Lacy. See, therefore, what proofs Sir Peter doth here bring for undoubted ones, as also how impartially he deals in the 5 page of his Answer to my Admonition, in that expression, viz. as is certainly recorded of the Duttons from Odard; whereas there is no certainty of what is there said, neither is that roll any record at all.

And as to that argument from Hodard's sword; as I find not any thing recorded which Hodard did to make his sword to be preserved, more then the swords of other gentlemen of that age; so on the other hand I give not much credit to those kinds of traditions; for I know but of two concerning my own family, and can prove them both to be certainly false; and if Sir Peter will create in me faith (equally strong with his) to believe that to be Hudard's sword, he must shew me some mention thereof on some deed, will, paper, parchment, roll, or record made within some reasonable time after the said Hudard's death, and not in any parchment or paper made several hundreds of years after his decease.



I shall therefore appeal to the indifferent reader, whether there be not as great a certainty that Ranulphus was ancestor of the Mainwarings, as there is that Hudard was the ancestor of the Dutton's; for the surname of Mainwaring was a fixed name, whereas that of Dutton was taken from that place; and the surname of Mesnilwaren or Mainwaring, as you may see in 111th page of Sir Peter's great booke, was used by Richard Mesnilwaren, which (except the said Ranulphus) is the first Mainwaring that we do find; whereas Sir Peter first adds the surname of Dutton to Hugh son of Hugh, who was the third of that family. And in the table hanged up at Battle Abbey, printed with Ordericus Vitalis, and in Stow and Hollinshed, and others, the family of Mainwaring is named as one of those which came in with William the Conquerour, which that of Dutton is not. And as the lands which Odard held in Dutton, Aston, Weston, and Halton, came to the Duttons; so the lands of the said Ranulphus in Blaken Wenitone, Tatton, Pever, Warford, Little Pever, Cepmundewich, Ollerton, Senelestune, Cocheshall, Holloch, Tadetune (which is the same with Warmincham), Norwardine, Sunderland, and Baggeley in Cheshire, and the lordship of Waburne in Norfolke, were certainly enjoyed by the Mainwarings; and as all the lands which the said Ranulphus had, were enjoyed by the Mainwarings, so for some generations after the Conquest we find very little land which the Mainwarings had besides those of Ranulphus; so that Sir Peter, instead of supposing Ranulphus to be the ancestor of

the Mainwarings (if he did not wilfully shut his eyes), might be as certain of that, as he is that Hodard was the ancestor of the Duttons.

To the second, he will not yet acknowledge that there were 7 hamlets in Peover, and says Radbrock and the other four there mentioned by me, are not called hamlets, as Cepmundewiche and Fodun were; and he also says that hamlets are, as it were, a ville within a ville, and are places more conspicuous, and usually containing a greater quantity of land than a private place, field, or tenement gaining certain names, &c. In answer whereunto, I shall first observe the strange boldness of Sir Peter, who having seen Cepmondwich and Fodon called in a deed in a private freeholders hand, dated 7 Edw. 3. upon which a fine was levied in the same year, will thereupon positively say (though he know nothing thereof) that neither Radbrock nor the other four were called hamlets, as Cepmondwich and Fodon were; whereas the contrary thereof doth plainly appeare by several of my deeds; so that I suppose the reader will not give much credit to what Sir Peter doth say. And Twyford, which is one of the five hamlets omitted by Sir Peter, is called the Manor of Twyford, in Over-Peover; the like whereof (I believe) cannot be found of either the aforesaid Cepmonswich or Fodon; and whereas he also says, an hamlet usually contains a greater quantity of land than a private place, field, or tenement, he well knows that many hamlets do consist of single tenements; and among the rest, Fodon itself so doth; John Beard being owner



(as Sir Peter calls it) of one half of that mesuage called Fodon, and my tenent Mr. Richard Acton being in possession of the other half of Fodon aforesaid.

But Sir Henry Spelman, in his Glossary, printed 1664, p. 274. will tell you what an hamlet is, who writes thus: Hamel, Hamleta, Hampsell] Diminutiva ab Ham, pro villa. Sed voces prima et ultima rarius occurrunt. Let autem Cal. Lit.] (ut me docuit in Hermathena Goropius) membrum significat, sic ut Hamleta propriè pars et membrum sit alterius villæ, potius quam per se existens villula. And afterwards, in the same page, he says that an hamlet is that quæ Medietatem Friborgi non obtinuit: hoc est, ubi quinque Capitales Plegii non deprehensi sunt. And I doubt not to satisfie any indifferent person, that the other places are hamlets, as well as Cepmundewich and Fodon, and that the most of them are larger than Fodon is (all Fodon being hardly of the value of 40*£* *per* ann.). And certainly Cepmundewich and Fodon were hamlets before Thomas de Cepmondewich so called them in his deed aforesaid, and would have been so, if he had not given them that term; so that many places may be and are hamlets which were never expressly so named in any deeds.

To the third, wherein I charge him with his omitting in the pedigree of the Mainwarings (p. 331) Ranulphus, mentioned in Doomesday Book, Richard Mesnilwarin, Roger de Mesnilgarin, and Wm. and Randle, his sonns, Roger de Menilgarin, Sir Ralph Mainwaring, and Sir Roger his son, he answers (but very strangely),

that if I had viewed well pag. 330. of his book, I might have found the last Roger Mainwaring, and Ralph Mainwaring his father, sometime judge of Chester, to have been mentioned there ; but that either of them were knights, it doth not certainly appear to him ; whereas, in the 7 page of my Admonition, I did observe that in his said 330 page he had occasionally taken notice of the said Sir Ralph and Sir Roger, as also shewed how in other pages of his said book he had mentioned all the rest, which he had omitted in the said pedigree, and did thereupon (as a further aggravation) tax him for leaving all them out in the said pedigree ; which pedigree he did begin in the following page. And though, he says, it doth not certainly appear to him that either the said last Roger, or his father Ralph, were knights, yet his own conscience cannot but tell him that they were knights, and he hath long since in print owned them both so to be ; and I shall satisfy any person that comes to me that they were most certainly knights, and I doubt not, (though he says he cannot do it,) but I can, and have put those Mainwarings which he omitted into right order, as they ought to be, and that with as certain proofs as he doth that family of which he would not have any doubt to be made. However, I cannot but again wonder at his strange boldnes in the 8 and 9 pages of his Answer to my Admonition, wherein he says, that though they (meaning the Mainwarings of Peover and Warmincham) were lords of Over-Peover, or the greatest part thereof, that yet certainly none of them lived at Over-Peover till the

time of King Henry the third, which is impossible for him to know. And why the Mainwarings of Warmincham might not then as well live at Peover, if Warmincham was their chief seat, as my father and I lived a long time at Baddeley, though Peover was our principal seat, or why Peover might not be the principal seat of the Mainwarings, though given by Sir Roger Mainwaring to his younger son Sir Wm. Mainwaring, as well as Sir [Rowland] Egerton in this age did give Egerton, his principal seat, to his younger son Sir Philip Egerton, will be hard (notwithstanding Sir Peter's certainty to the contrary) for any man to tell; and whereas, in his 10 page (being always excellent at proving negatives) he says it is certaine that Wm. Mainwaring (meaning him to whom his father, Sir Roger Mainwaring, gave Peover, in Henry the 3ds time) was no knight, and for the end takes notice of a deed (for I have reason to believe he hath seen but one such, notwithstanding his many quotations), wherein Sir Wm. Mainwaring, parson of Wernith, was subscribed as a witness, and thereupon concludes, if you find any William subscribed Dnō Gulielmo Mainwaring in that age, that it is to be understood of William the Parson: herein he fights with his owne shadow, for Sir Wm. Mainwaring is not subscribed Domino Gulielmo Mainwaring, or as a witnes to that deed which proves him to be a knight; but that deed concerns lands in an hamlet in Peover, then passed away, whereby a rent was reserved to the said Sir William and his heirs; and there is another Wm. Mainwaring witnes to the said deed. And this

will shew that Sir John Mainwaring, who lived in the time of Henry 6, was not the first knight of the family of the Mainwarings of Over-Peover, in Sir Peter's own sense ; but all other persons will readily allow those Mainwarings who were owners both of Warmincham and Over-Peover, and were knights, to be of the family of the Mainwarings of Peover ; and Sir Peter cannot deny but that I am their heir male, and that all the Mainwarings who were owners of Warmincham, were owners of Peover also, except Sir Tho. Mainwaring and Sir Warine Mainwaring, who were the two last, Warmincham going away to Sir Wm. Trussell of Cublesdon, the younger, with the said Sir Warine's daughter and heir.

To the fourth, he doth confess that he may be mistaken therein, (see how unwilling he is to acknowledge it absolutely,) and says, by long pausing on my owne deeds I might the better discover it. But it is better to pause a while then to make too much hast ; for *Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos* ; and sure a little pausing might serve to discover that Hugh Holt, who was husband of Margery Praers in 33 Edw. 3. was her husband before John Honford was, who was her husband in 46, 47, and 50 Edw. 3.

To the fifth he says, Wm. Leigh of Baggiley was no knight 33 Edw. 3, when he married Joane Mainwaring, for he was then very young and under age ; and therefore no error, &c. ; howbeit he was afterwards a knight, which he took notice of in due place. But I say that his knowing that he was a knight, and not

calling him so in my pedigree, adds to the fault ; and he must call but very few persons knights in pedigrees if he will call none so but such as were knights before the time that they were married.

To the sixth he says that he that tricked out that seal for him (meaning that which was two bars, with a lion passant guardant on a cheife), saw, as well as himself, that the seal was 3 bars, and not 2 bars, to the best of their judgment ; but I believe the person that tricked out the seal, did trick it out right ; for it is cut right, with 2 bars, in Sir Peter's great book ; so that the only fault (I doubt) was that Sir Peter could not blazen that coat aright, and he yet will not amend his other error ; but still, in his Answer to my Admonition to the Reader, calls it a lion in cheife, instead of a lion on a cheife.

To the seventh he says he must needs omitt John and Margery, brother and sister to the said Helen, which he then knew nothing of, &c. ; and it was not his designe to collect all the children of the younger sons. But with his leave, I had informed him of the said John and Margery ; and by the same reason that he named Hellen, he should have named the said Margery and John, they being brother and sister to the said Hellen.

To the eighth he says that he but guessed at the death of Wm. (son of Roger Mainwaring), without any exact certainty, when he said, he died about 12 or 13 Edw. 3. and therefore says that it is a very poor exception. But the exception is no poor one, because I

had informed him that the said William was living, and party to a deed made on the eve of Saint John Baptist, 14 Edw. 3. which deed he also quotes in the 2d line of his 332 page, being the same page in which he said the said William died about 12 or 13 Edw. 3.

To the ninth, whereas I had taxed him with saying that Wm. Mainwaring, son of Wm. Mainwaring and Joane Praers, did divide the lands of Baddeley between John Mainwaring his half-brother, and John Honford ; whereas he had formerly given several thousand acres of land, which came by his mother, and of which the demesne of Baddeley was part, solely to his said brother John, and only divided the remainder of the said lands : to this Sir Peter answers, why, then, he divided the lands of Baddeley ; and I yet say, he then divided but part of the lands of Baddeley.

To the tenth, whereas he said that Wm. Mainwaring's seal had the impression of his coat and crest, to wit, in an escocheon two bars only, and cornerways, on the dexter angle, on an helmet, an asse-head cooped, &c., which the said, his heirs have ever since continued, to wit, Argent two bars gules, the crest, an asse-head, couped proper, his answer is, (because I shew they have given the asse-head several other ways,) that I make here no certain crest to my family, and calls it a very worthy exception. But, with his leave, it shews his mistakes ; and it is no wonder that crests were not then settled, many persons having since then altered their crests ; and Sir Peter's family hath, since that time, given two distinct crests, as may be seen in the



21 page of my Reply to his Answer to the Defence of Amicia ; and I am sure those two crests of the Leicester's of Tabley did differ much more then these of ours which I have mentioned.

To the eleventh, whereas I had taken notice how Sir Peter had said, that Wm. Mainwaring, the husband of Katherine Belgrave and Clementia Cotton, settled his estate, upon his departure out of England towards Guien, 17 Ric. 2. 1393, and afterwards made his will 1394 ; whereas the said settlement made 17 Ric. 2. was also a will, and was but of part of that estate which he had by his mother. Sir Peter to this says, that he neither said he settled the lands of the one nor the other, but only that he settled his estate, which, if it were either of his mothers lands, or fathers land, he said truth. But to this I say, that any ingenious indifferent man will easily discern the difference betwixt the estate of the said William, and only part of those lands which he had from his mother and descent.

To the twelfth Sir Peter says that probably the marriage of John Mainwaring with Sir John Waren's widow, was about the 13 Hen. 4. which is a thing I never denied ; but that which I observed was, that Sir Peter, in the 333 page of his great book, said they were married about 13 Ric. 2. for Sir John Warren died the 10 Ric. 2. and I thereupon said that I did not understand how Sir John Warren dying in the 10 Ric. 2. did prove that John Mainwaring married his widow about 13 Ric. 2. but it seems Sir Peter doth not yet perceive to what he ought to answer in this place.

To the thirteenth he says, my exception, that he omitted John Mainwaring's being sheriff of Cheshire 7 H. 4. was a childish one, as most of the other be ; but, with his leave, I having informed him thereof, he ought to have observed it, as well as he did that he was sheriff there in the 4. 5. 6. of Hen. 4.

To the fourteenth, when I charge him with saying positively that John Mainwaring died 11 Hen. 4. 1410, whereas he was certainly dead in the year 1409, he says it is a pittiful exception, and asketh why I do not produce authority for the exact time of his death. But as pittiful as he makes it, Vincent, in his corrections upon Brook, and all others in the like case, make such exceptions ; and the time of his death plainly appears to be 1409, by a precept to the sheriff of Cheshire, to enquire what lands he died seized of, dated at Chester the 13 of March in that very year ; and if a writer will take upon him to tell the time of a man's death, he ought to tell the true year.

To the fifteenth, he acknowledgeth that to be a mistake ; but says he hath rectified it in print long since, at the end of his said book, among the errata, and also at the end of his Answer to the Defence of Amicia, so soon as he knew the certainty of it, and therefore ought not to be charged upon him. But to this I answer, that my work being at that time to observe what mistakes he made in those 2 sheets, and this being one of those, and not amended by him, till I told him of it in print, it ought to be mentioned by me here ; and he runs into another error, by saying he rectified it



so soon as he knew the certainty of it, for I had told him of it before he printed his great book.

To the sixteenth, wherein he had said that Sir John Mainwaring, of Over-Peover, died about the very end of Edw. the 4ths reign, whereas the said king died in the 23 year of his reign, and the said Sir John was certainly dead on the 14th of April, which was near the beginning of the 20th year of the said king, he doth implicitly acknowledge his mistake, for he says, had he but said towards the latter end of Edw. 4, he had not much erred, and he could not put down the exact time till he knew it. Now Edw. 4. reigned but 22 years in all; but I say I did acquaint him with this mistake; and he here runs into another little one, for Edw. 4. died in the 23 year of his reign, and therefore reigned something more then 22 years in all.

To the seventeenth, he also acknowledgeth that to be a mistake; and though he did amend it at the last, yet for the same reason which I gave to the 15th, it ought to be mentioned here; but whereas he says, so soon as he found out the truth, he rectified that omission in print; that is not so, for I had before then informed him of it, as you may see p. 78, at the end of my Defence of Amicia; and to put down Maude, daughter of Sir John Savage, instead of Agnes Mainwaring, was more then an omission, though he be loath to confess the same.

To the eighteenth, whereas I had shewed him that probably Wm. Newton was not married to Katherine,

daughter of Sir John Mainwaring, untill the year 1522, although he had possitively said they were married in 1521 ; and thereupon I charged him with writing an uncertainty as a possitive truth, he answers, that it is as probable they were married 1521 as 1522 ; and can absolute certainty be always found out in matters of this nature in every particular ? Therefore let it stand till it be proved to be an error. But this doth not cleer Sir Peter from what he stands charged with ; for (as I proved in my Admonition) the deeds concerning the lands which the said Catherine was to have in joynture (at the making of which deeds she was certainly unmarried), were dated, the one, the first, the other, the 2d of March, in the 13th Hen. 8. which was in the year 1521, according to the accompt of the Church of England, but in the year 1522 according to the Julian accompt. Now the Dominicall letter being that year E, and the Golden number 3, the second of March would be Shrove Sunday, and the 20th of April would be Easter day ; and Lent being a time not usual for marriages, and especially in those times of Popery, it is more then probable the said marriage was not till after Easter day ; and if so, it was not until the year 1522. However, he doth not clear himself from writing an uncertainty as a certainty, which is all that he there stands charged with.

To the nineteenth, whereas he said that Sr John Mainwaring was sheriff of Flintshire 6 Hen. 8. but took no notice that he was sheriff there 23 and 24 Hen. 7. and also 1 and 2 Hen. 8. he answers, it is

true what he hath said, and well enough without it, &c., and shall his credit be impeached, &c., because he cannot know every thing? But for all this, he, having formerly been informed of these things, is justly charged with an omission herein.

To the twentieth, speaking of the time of Sir John Mainwaring's death, he says it perhaps were better placed to be anno 1516 or 1517; let him find out the absolute time, and I will mend it; but he is not blamed for saying Sir John Mainwaring died 1515, for his monument says he died in that year, but for saying he died 8 Hen. 8. 1515; whereas no part of the 8th year of King Hen. 8. was in any part of that year, the 8th year of K. Hen. 8. not beginning till the 22 of Aprill, 1516; so that it seems Sir Peter did not understand what he here stood charged withall.

To the one and twentieth, whereas he was charged with saying possitively that Sir Randle Mainwaring, after the death of his first wife, married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Ralph Leicester, of Toft, 6 Edw. 6. 1551, whereas it cannot be proved that they were married till the year 1552; he answers, therefore, let it stand donec probetur contrarium; it may be so for ought he knows, wherein (to say nothing of the strangeness of the rule he there gives) he doth acknowledge what he said to be uncertaine; and that is all which he was there charged with.

To the two and twentieth, whereas he said Philip Mainwaring, Esq., was the 5th son of Sir John Mainwaring, when, indeed, he was the 7th son born, Sir

Peter answers, it may be so, but they all dyed young, and Philip became heir ; if it be an error, it is but a small one, and not materiall. In which answer of his, as he doth acknowledge his error, but with an if, so he also runs into two new errors, in saying that they all died young, and Philip became heir ; for Sir Randle, the elder brother of the said Philip, lived to a considerable age, being first married to Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Randle Brereton, of Malpas, and widow of Richard Cholmondeley, of Cholmondeley, in Cheshire, Esq., in or before the year 1518, by whom he had 3 daughters, who were married in the life time of the said Sir Randle Mainwaring and the said Elizabeth, his first wife ; and afterwards the said Sir Randle married Elizabeth, the daughter of Sir Ralph Leicester, of Toft, in Cheshire, by whom he had no issue ; and the said Sir Randle died the 6th of Septr, in the 4 or 5 years of Philip and Mary, 1557 ; so that the said Sir Randle did not die young, living at least 39 years after his said first marriage ; neither did the said Philip become heir, but heir male to the said Sir Randle.

To the three and twentieth, whereas Sir Peter was charged with saying that the herald in the raigne of Queen Elizabeth made for the coat of Sir Randle Mainwaring the elder, barry of twelve pieces, argent and gules, where in truth the said Sir Randle did then usually bear argent, six barulets gules, and that Sir Peter (as appears by the 330 page of his great book) knew the coat to be 6 barulets, and not to be barry of 12 pieces argent and gules, Sir Peter answers, that

it is true he said the antient deed of Roger Mainwaring, made in the reign of King Henry 3. was sealed with an escocheon of six barulets ; but also says that the coat devised for the said Sir Randle, Gwillim the herald calls it barry of 12 pieces, he says he knows not the criticisme in these termes of heraldry, &c. ; and he says he hath committed no error at all ; for he there vouched Gwillim for it. But herein Sir Peter's unwillingness to confess an error will easily appear ; for though it be true that Gwillim did erre, as well as Sir Peter, in saying that the coat of Sir Randle Mainwaring was barry of 12 pieces argent and gules, yet Sir Peter, but not Gwillim, erred in saying in the reign of Queen Elizabeth the herald made for this Sir Randle's coat barry of twelve pieces argent and gules, for Gwillim sayd no such thing, and the coat that the herald then directed to be borne was not (as Sir Peter says) barry of 12 pieces A. and G., but 6 barulets G. And the reason why the said Sir Randle (my great grandfather) left of the two barres (though there be deeds without date sealed with two barrs) was, because there were ancient deeds of his ancestors sealed with 6 barulets, then there were that were sealed with 2 bars ; but Sir Peter, instead of confessing this error, runs into another in the 23 page of his Answer to my Admonition, where he says, that here I confessed what he said to be truth, that the herald in the reigne of Qu. Eliz. made for Sir Randle Mainwaring's coat barry of 12 pieces A. and G. ; whereas, I answere, I did neither there, nor any where else, say any such thing.

To the four and twentieth, whereas he said the fabrick of Over-Peover being now of brick, was built in 1586, and I said part was built in 1585 and part in 1586, he says it is a worshipfull exception, and that it is more proper to ascribe the time when it was built to the finishing of it, then when it was begun, for it was not all built till it was finished ; to which I answer, that there had been little cause for this objection, if I had not told him that one part was built in one year, and another part in another year. But an exact writer ought to put things exactly down ; but this rule, that an house must be sayd to be built in the year that it is finished, is a very odd one, for then an old house, that was almost, but not wholly built, an hundred years ago, if the rest should be built this year, might be said to be a very new house, though the greatest part thereof by much was built an hundred years since.

To the five and twentieth, he doth acknowledge his words were not well order'd, when he said Sir Philip Mainwaring was secretary of Ireland to the Earle of Stafford, whereas the said Sir Philip was his Majestie's secretary of state there ; and further sayth that he corrected it in his notes at the side of his own book long before, without any admonition from Sir Thomas ; but as it is strange that he did not discover this mistake concerning Sir Philip Mainwaring, who was his mother's brother, in all those years that his booke was written, before it was printed (which was very many years), so, on the other hand, if he did discover it without any admonition from me, yet his book being printed with



that mistake in it, I had reason to take notice of it, and so am justified in what I did.

To the six and twentieth, he would excuse himself, because he says he did write according to what we say in the country. But an exact writer should write as it really is, not as people say in the country ; and I only named the house to shew it was not in London, but (in Westminster, and) a good way from thence.

To the seven and twentieth, in which I observed how he had omitted, in his 336 page, that Sir Robert Brerewood was made sarjeant at law 1640, as also that he was made one of the judges of the Court of King's Bench 1643 ; as also how he had said, in his 187 page, that Sir Robert Brerewood was made judge of the Common Pleas in 1643 ; whereas the king did constitute him, in the year 1643, *unum justiciariorum ad Placita coram Rege*, that is, one of the judges of the King's Bench, or Upper Bench : but he was never judge of the Common Pleas. And whereas I had also observed how, in the 334 page of his great book, he had said Sir John Nedham, who married Margaret, the da. of Sir Randle Mainwaring, was *justiciarius de Banco*, and judge of Chester, 1 Edw. 4. and that I did thereupon suppose he did erroneously take *justiciarius de Banco* to be a judge of the King's Bench, as he had erroneously taken *justiciarius ad Placita coram Rege* to be a judge of the Common Pleas ; and that I also gave this reason, that I did believe he took *justiciarius de Banco* to be a judge of the King's Bench, or else I believe he would have told us that the said John Nedham was afterwards

made a judge of the King's Bench, for he had a patent to be one of the judges of that court 1472, 11 Edw. 4. as may be seen in the Chronica Series at the end of Mr. Dugdale's Origines Juridiciales, printed in the year 1666 : His answer is, that for the first it was not necessary nor material to take notice in that place of Sir Robert Brerewood's being made either serjeant at law, or judge of the King's Bench ; for, though it would have been fuller to have put them in here, yet it is no error without it. And I had before (as Sir Thomas here confesseth) among the recorders of Chester, p. 187, there taken notice both of his being serjeant at law, and being made judge of the Common Pleas ; howbeit, Sir Thomas sayth, it should have been judge of the King's Bench. Be it so ; I had it but by common fame. Then, as to Judge Nedham : I called him justiciarius de Banco, p. 334. which Sir Thomas supposeth I did there erroneously take for a judge of the King's Bench ; yet doth not Sir Thomas find me any where so expounding it ; so that Sir Thomas will suppose I have committed an error before there be one. In which answer the reader may easily perceive how unwilling Sir Peter is to acknowledge his mistake in calling Sir Robert Brerewood a judge of the Common Pleas ; for he only says he had, p. 187. taken notice both of his being serjeant at law, and being made judge of the Common Pleas ; howbeit Sir Thomas saith, it should have been judge [Note, of the King's Bench, &c.], so loath he is to directly confess his error in calling him judge of the Common Pleas. And then as to that of Judge Nedham,



he says I do not any where find him expounding justiciarius de Banco to be judge of the King's Bench ; so that he says, I will suppose him to have committed an error before there be one ; but I believe the learned reader will easily discern, and rest satisfied, that as Sir Peter did erroneously take justiciarius ad Placita coram Rege to be Latine for a judge of the Court of Common Pleas, so he did also erroneously take justiciarius de Banco to be Latin for a judge of the King's Bench ; or else he would have taken notice that Judge Nedham was afterwards made a judge of the King's Bench ; and there is hardly any one who did mistake the one but he would mistake the other also ; and therefore I think Sir Peter had done better ingeniously to have acknowledged both his errors then to answer as he doth concerning the same. And whereas he sayth, in the 28 page, that what he said concerning Sir Robert Brerewood he had it but by common fame, I wonder how that could be, for when was there ever any common fame that Sir Robert Brerewood was made a judge of the Court of Common Pleas ? being he was never any judge of that court : And seeing Sir Peter doth acknowledge in print, that he writes what he had but by common fame, I may upon just grounds declare that there is the less reason to give too much heed to what he doth write.

To the eight and twentieth, he doth acknowledge that to be a very material mistake, so that there needs no more to be said concerning the same.

To the nine and twentieth, whereas he said that the

stable and dove house at Peover were built in the year 1654, whereas the stable was built in the year 1653, and finished within the year 1654, and the dove house was not built till 1656, he answers, this is another childish exception to be put in print ; neither is the first of these any error at all. But as that of the dove house is clearly mistaken two years, so it is true that the stable was built in the year 1653 ; for it was and would have been a stable, if that fret-work over the head, and the carved-work and turn'd work which was done in the year 1654, had never been made.

To the thirtyeth, whereas he had said that Margaret, the dau. of Sir Randle Mainwaring the younger, and wife of Henry Birkenhead, died at Chester 25 July, 1661, when, in truth, she died on Saturday, the 20 of July, 1661, and was buried at Backford, on Tuesday, the 23 of the same month, his answer is, that possibly he might miswrite the number 25 for 20, or it might be mistaken by the printer, but a mistake he doth confess it is ; and if it was the printer's, why did he not take notice thereof, when he did correct others of the like kind ?

Thus I have gone over Sir Peter's Answer to my Admonition, and have shewed that he cannot clear himself from any one of those things which I laid to his charge, neither do I believe any man living can shew so many mistakes within the compass of any two sheets that were ever put in print.

Before I conclude what I have here to say, I think fit to observe, how Sir Peter, in his Answer to my

Admonition, p. 38, says thus : If Sir Thomas shall not aver against a record (as sometimes he hath done against an original deed), his cavils cannot smother the truth, nor defend what he here sayth, when it shall come publicquely to be scanned. By which he first implies, that I have averred against an original deed, which I do deny. I cannot imagine what he doth mean thereby ; and secondly, he doth thereby insinuate, that I cannot disprove what he doth suppose to be the age of Matilda (countess of Chester), and some other things, unless I aver against that record, which Sir Peter in that case doth cite. But as I shall agree with him, that no man can aver against a record, as also that no man can make out a record by averrement (that is, no man will be admitted to say a record says so, or a record doth not say so, but he must either produce the original record, or else a copie thereof, and prove it to be a true copie), yet for all this, the law will give any man liberty to prove the falsity of any record as to matter of fact that is brought against him, if so he can (and this manifestly shews that Sir Peter doth not understand what it is to averre against a record) : To make good what I here say, on Tuesday next, before the feast of St. Nicholas the Bishop, in the 6 year of Ric. 2. when Wm. Mainwaring, my ancestor, son to Joane, one of the daughters and coheirs of Wm. Praers, of Baddeley, was beyond the seas, in the king's service, John, son of John, son of Henry de Honford, brought an action against one Wm. Pryden, for a messuage and eight acres of land in Burland, in Cheshire, pretending

himself to be the son and heir of Margery, the other daughter and coheir of the said Wm. Praers ; and also pretending that the said Wm. Pryden had disseised his said mother Margery of the said messuage and lands ; and at the said time, the said John, son of John, son of Henry de Honford, got possession of those lands. But notwithstanding this, the said Wm. Mainwaring, upon his return into England, by an inquisition now remaining in the exchequer at Chester, dated 28 Febr., 21 R. 2. in the life time of the said John, son of John, son of Henry de Honford, did prove that the said John, son of John, son of Henry de Honford, was base son of her the said Margery, and not her son and heir ; and that there was a combination betwixt the said John and the said Wm. Pryden. And the said Wm. Mainwaring, during his life, had all the land of the said Margery after her death ; and dying without issue, disposed of her lands as he pleased, and they were enjoyed accordingly.

So also, if John a Stile and John an Oakes be at suit concerning land, and John a Stile have one or more verdicts, and recover against the other notwithstanding that record or records, John an Oakes may bring it about again, and plead the land to be his, and perhaps recover the same. And this Sir Peter knows, by a case of his owne, is not impossible to be done. So also, if I should sue Sir Peter Leicester for some land of his, and in a record alleadge the said land to be my land, Sir Peter, notwithstanding that the said record said that land was mine, might plead, and also prove,

that land to be his. So that the disproving that matter of fact which is contained in a record, is not an averring against a record; and therefore Sir Peter, by this devise, cannot take away my liberty of disproving what he hath said in the aforesaid case; for I doubt not but all persons who have read my book, entitled *The Legitimacy of Amicia* clearly proved, are abundantly satisfied of Sir Peter's mistake of the age of Matilda, countesse of Chester, notwithstanding the said record.

I also here declare, that notwithstanding what I have here written, I do not at all doubt but that Hudard or Odard, mentioned in *Domesday Book*, was the lineall male ancestor of the Duttons of Dutton; but I also think it is full as clear that Ranulphus, mentioned in the said book, was the undoubted lineal male ancestor of the Mainwarings of Peover; and I suppose every impartial reader will agree with me herein.



A

# GLOSSARY OF TERMS

USED IN THE

## COAL TRADE

OF

NORTHUMBERLAND AND DURHAM.

---

*Second Edition.*

---

LONDON:

JOHN GRAY BELL, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN.

---

1851.



TO

YOUNG MEN

ENTERING UPON THE PROFESSION

OF

COLLIERY VIEWING,

THIS LITTLE WORK IS DEDICATED,

WITH

THE AUTHOR'S BEST WISHES.





## PREFACE.

---

IT has long been a matter of surprise to the author of the few following pages, that notwithstanding the number of men in the Coal Trade eminently qualified for the task, no really practically useful elementary work, explaining its technicalities to the uninitiated, and having, in a great degree, as its object, the advancement in knowledge of those subordinate officers employed in collieries, upon whose intelligence and information so much not unfrequently depends, should have yet appeared. To attempt, in some small degree, to remedy, to the best of his ability, this deficiency, was, at a former period, the writer's intention ; the "Glossary" to be, in fact, merely an appendix to such a work ; but the subject, to be carried properly out, has been found to be so voluminous, and, moreover, the use of technicalities so unavoidable,

that it has been thought advisable to write the Glossary first. With this statement, the writer must crave the indulgence of some, infinitely more able than himself to treat a subject so important; especially assuring them, that should they think proper to take the hint, and favour the Trade with such a work in their own masterly style, no one will feel more grateful than himself.

*May, 1849.*

# GLOSSARY,

&c., &c.

---

**ADDLE, ADLE.**—To earn.

**ADDLINGS, ADLINGS.**—Earnings.

**AFTERDAMP.**—See Choke-damp.

**AIR.**—The current of air circulating through and ventilating a mine.

**AIR-BOX.**—A square wooden tube used to convey air into the face of a single drift, or shaft, in sinking. It ought not to be less, if required of considerable length, than one foot square inside, and may be made larger with advantage.

**AIRWAY.**—A passage along which the current of air travels.

**APPARATUS.**—Machinery at the surface, for separating the small coals, skreened out from the round, into nuts and duff. The small coals, which have passed through the skreen, are drawn by the winding engine, either vertically or up an inclined framing, in a tub called an apparatus tub, which teems itself at the top of the frame; and passed over a second skreen, the nuts to the waggons for sale, and the dead small, or duff, which falls through the skreen, to the waste heap.

**ARLES, EARLES.**—Earnest money, formerly given to men and boys when hired at the bindings.

Previous to 1804, a custom of giving two or three guineas per hewer, as binding or bounty money, had

crept into the trade ; but in 1804, so great were the fears of procuring the necessary supply of men, that from twelve to fourteen guineas per man were given upon the Tyne, and eighteen guineas upon the Wear ; and progressive exorbitant bounties were paid to putters, drivers, and irregular workmen. Drink was lavished in the utmost profusion, and every sort of extravagance perpetrated.

The evil effects of the system of binding-money produced a re-action, so that it was very soon after discontinued ; and, for many years, the only expense has been two shillings to men, and one shilling to boys. (*Dunn, View of the Coal Trade.*)

Since the pitmen's strike in 1844, the " arles" have been altogether discontinued.

**AVERAGE WEIGHT.**—The mean weight of a tub of coals at a colliery for any fortnight, upon which the hewers' and putters' wages are calculated ; a fixed price being paid for a standard weight.

The average weight is usually obtained by weighing two tubs in each score ; the average tubs being fixed upon by the weighers whilst they are being drawn in the shaft to the surface. There are generally two weighers ; one appointed and paid by the colliery, and the other by the workmen.

**BACK.**—A diagonal parting in coal ; a description of hitch, where the strata are not dislocated. At a back, there is frequently a glassy parting, and sometimes a little sooty danty coal. When, on approaching a back, it is observed to form an acute angle with the thill of the seam, it is called an east back ; when it forms an obtuse angle, it is called a west back. Thus, the same back will be an east or a west back, according to the direction in which it is mined through.

**BACK-END.**—In working a four or five yard board, an excavation, or kirving, is made in the bottom part of the coal, half of the width of the board, and as far in as the hewer is able to make it with his pick. This is followed by a vertical cutting, equally far in, next

to the side of the place. A hole is then drilled near the roof, and fast side of the coal undermined ; and in it gunpowder is placed, and the coal blown down. This is called the Sump. The remaining half of the place is called the Back-end, and is similarly undermined and shot down.

**BACK-OVERMAN.**—An overman who has the immediate inspection of the workings and workmen during the Back-shift. His wages are about 21s. per week.

**BACK-SHIFT.**—The second shift of hewers in each day. It commences four hours after the pit begins to draw coals.

**BACKING-DEALS.**—Deals placed behind cribs, for the support of the walls of a pit, where the stone is bad. They are generally, when only temporarily required, made of  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch Scotch deals, and are used in sinking, being replaced by walling, after a foundation has been obtained.

**BAFF-END.**—A piece of wood, 15 or 18 inches long, 5 or 6 inches broad, and from 1 to 2 inches thick, used for driving behind cribs or tubbing, to bring them to their proper position in a pit. A quantity of these are used in sinking, where much tubbing is required to be put in.

**BAFF-WEEK.**—Every alternate week ; the week succeeding the pay-week.

**BAG OF GAS.**—A cavity found occasionally in fiery seams of coal, containing highly condensed gas ; whether in a gaseous or fluid (or solidified) form, has not yet been ascertained. On the coal being worked away until it is no longer equal to resist the elastic force of the compressed gas, the gas escapes with a sort of explosion, displacing the coal, filling the adjoining workings, and firing at the first unprotected lights it meets with, after being brought down to the firing point by a due admixture of atmospherical air. (*Buddle, Account of Explosion at Jarrow Colliery.*)

**BAIT.**—Provision taken by a pitman to his work.



**BALK.**—A species of hitch ; the roof of the seam coming down into the coal without any corresponding depression of the thill, thus causing a nip. Balks are most frequent when the roof of the coal is a stratum of sandstone or post. Also, a piece of strong timber, usually used in rolleyways or permanent passages, to support the roof ; each of its ends being supported by a prop, or by being notched into the wall side.

**BALN-STONE.**—Roof-stone.

**BAND.**—An interstratification of stone with coal.

**BANK.**—Above ground.

**BANK-OUT.**—To teem the coals into a heap as they are drawn, instead of into the waggons.

**BANKSMAN.**—A man who draws the full tubs from the cages at the surface, when drawn by the winding engine, and replaces them with empty ones : he also puts the full tubs to the skreens, and teems the coals. It is also his duty to keep an account of the quantity of coals drawn each day. The banksman's wages are about 4s. per day of twelve hours : he is usually paid by the quantity drawn.

**BARGAIN-WORK.**—Work, such as stone or coal drifting, rolleyway making, &c., let by proposal, amongst the workmen at a colliery, to the lowest offer.

**BARRIER.**—A breadth of coal left against an adjoining royalty, for security against casualty arising from water or foul air. Barriers are left of various thicknesses, frequently 20 yards, but varying, according to supposed necessity, from 10 to 50 yards.

**BARROWMAN.**—A putter ; one who puts the tubs of coals from the working places to the cranes, flats, or stations, whence they are taken by horses along the main or rolleyways to the shaft. Formerly, before the application of tramways underground, coals used to be conveyed in barrows, whence the name.

The average day's work of a barrowman, who, when putting alone, is a young man from 17 to 20 or 21 years of age, is equal, on level road laid with bridge

rails, and with tubs having flanchèd wheels 10 inches diameter, to—

1 empty tub = 3 cwt. pushed 8280 yards,	<i>lb.</i>
or 7057 tons pushed 1 mile, or	8,346,240 pushed 1 foot.
1 full tub = 10 cwt. pushed 8280 yards,	
or 23·523 tons pushed 1 mile, or	27,820,800 pushed 1 foot.

---

Total day's work, 3·0580 tons pushed a	
distance of one mile, or	36,167,040 pushed 1 foot.

And, taking the friction at 1-65th part, on account of the imperfect nature of the way, and the small diameter of the tub wheels, and being also the mean of six experiments, the mean permanent force exercised by the barrowman for 12 hours is equal to 556,416 lbs. raised 1 foot in 12 hours, or 6·44 lbs. raised 2 feet per second, which is equivalent to 7·728 lbs. raised 2 feet per second for 10 hours, or about one-fourth part of the mean relative or permanent force of a man, as estimated by Mr. Tredgold.

Barrowmen are usually paid from 11d. to 15d. per score of 6 tons, put an average distance of 80 yards, with 1d. extra per score for every additional 20 yards.

**BARROW-WAY.**—The way along which the barrowmen put the corves or tubs of coals. It is either laid with tram-plates or bridge-rails; but the latter are preferable. Twenty-four inches between the rails is a good gauge, being suitable both for barrow-way and horse-road.

**BASTARD WHIN.**—Very hard post or sandstone, but not so flinty as to be called whin.

**BATEWORK.**—Short work.

**BEANS.**—A description of small coals, so called from their size.

**BEAT-HAND.**—(Built?) A hand which, from being vesicated or *blushed* with hard work, has festered.

**BEATER.**—An iron rod, used for stemming or tamping a hole, preparatory to blasting.

**BECHE** (called by the workmen *Bitch*).—An instrument made of iron, and having some resemblance to



the extinguisher of a candle, used in boring, for the purpose of extricating the bottom portion of a broken set of bore-rods from a bore-hole. The hollow part may be made 16 inches long,  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches in diameter at the bottom, and  $\frac{5}{8}$  in. diameter at the top.

**BIND.**—To hire.

**BINDING.**—Up to 1810, the binding took place on the Saturday nearest to fourteen days previous to October 10th, but after this year until 1844, on the Saturday nearest to fourteen days previous to the 5th April, the engagement being from October 10th and April 5th for twelve months. Since 1844, the usual agreement in the coal trade has been to hire for one month; either party being at liberty to terminate the engagement at the expiration of one month's previous notice.

**BOARD (WIDE).**—An excavation, a pillar in length, and four or five yards in width, usually driven at right angles to the cleavage of the coal.

**BOARD (NARROW).**—An excavation similar in direction to a wide board, but not more than two yards wide.

**BOARDWAY'S COURSE.**—The direction perpendicular to the cleavage of the coal.

**BOLL.**—A coal measure. The coal boll contains 9676·8 cubic inches, or 34·899 imperial gallons. (*H. Taylor, Esq.'s Evid. before Select Committee, House of Lords, 1829.*)

**BOND.**—The agreement to hire between coal owners and pitmen.

**BORE.**—To ascertain the nature of strata, by means of bore-rods and apparatus connected therewith, which consist of—

1st, *Common rods.* These are made of the best iron,  $\frac{7}{8}$  or 1 inch square, in lengths of 3 feet, with a male screw at one end, and a female screw at the other end of each length, for the purpose of joining them together as required. There are also short pieces, of the length of 6, 12, and 18 inches, for the purpose of adjustment. Such rods weigh about 22 lbs. per fathom.

2nd, *Chisels* are made 18 inches in length, and  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches broad at the edge, and tapering upwards to the screw joint. The chisel weighs  $4\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.

3rd, *Wimbles*. In boring through shales, the borings adhere sufficiently to the chisel to allow of being drawn out of the hole; that is to say, when the hole is damp enough to work the borings in shale into clay. In a dry hole, or in boring through posts or sandstones, the case is different, and another implement is required to be introduced on withdrawing the chisel. It consists of a cylinder, 24 inches long, open at the bottom, and also at the top, about 12 inches below the joint; it has also a partial covering at the bottom, like an auger, for the purpose of retaining the core with which it fills when worked in the hole. Wimbles are also used in boring near the surface, through clay. Their external diameter must be such as to admit of their following the chisel. A wimble weighs about 12 lbs.

4th, *Sludgers* differ from wimbles in having a clack near the bottom of the cylinder, and are used when a bore-hole is so wet that the borings would, unless retained by a clack or some such contrivance, be washed out of the cylinder, on being drawn to the surface. The sludger is also useful in boring through a seam of coal, in bringing up samples of coal when cut by the chisel.

5th, *Beche*. See BECHE. 25 inches long, and weighs 6 lb.

6th, *Bracehead*. A piece of tough ash or oak, 36 inches long, passed through an eye in a short piece of iron, at the other end of which is a screw, to connect with the rods. There are both single and double braceheads: with the former, two men, and with the latter, four men, may be applied; and, without other assistance, a bore-hole may be put down 20 fathoms. For a greater depth—

7th, *A Brake* becomes necessary. It consists of a lever, from 8 to 12 feet long; the axis or fulcrum

being placed 18 inches or 2 feet from the end above the bore-hole. To this end a hook is fixed, upon which the rods are suspended by a chain, attached to a piece of doubled rope, which is passed over a bracehead at the top of the rods. When all is ready, the lever is weighed down by one or more men, according to the depth of the hole and weight of the rods, which occasions the rods to be raised; they are then allowed to fall back into the hole, the chisel cutting the stratum as it descends. The master of the shift of borers is stationed at the bracehead, by means of which he moves the rods round at each stroke, so as to keep the hole perfectly circular. He can also distinguish, by the touch, the nature of the stratum through which the chisel is passing.

The rods should be drawn, and the hole cleaned, every six inches. There are, besides, other tools, such as keys, &c., which are constantly required for unscrewing the rods, and small braceheads to which to attach the rope for drawing the rods by means of a jack-roll. They are drawn by a block, or set of blocks, suspended from a triangle, or pair of shear legs, placed over the hole. The triangle should not, for a deep hole, be less than 35 or 40 feet in height.

**BLOWER.**—A fissure in the roof, floor, or side of a mine, from which a feeder of inflammable air discharges. (*Buddle, First Report of Society for preventing Accidents in Coal Mines.*)

**BRACEHEAD.**—See *Bore*.

**BRAKE.**—See *Bore*. Also a band of iron caused by a lever to press upon a sheave or wheel, to check its motion.

**BRAKESMAN.**—The engineman who attends to the winding machine.

**BRAT.**—A thin stratum of a coarse mixture of coal and carbonate of lime or pyrites, frequently found lying at the roof of a seam of coal.

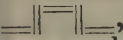
**BRATTICE.**—A partition, generally of deal, placed in the shaft of a pit, or in a drift or other working of

a colliery, for the purpose of ventilation. The former is called the shaft brattice ; the latter, the drift, headways, board, &c., brattice, according to the situation in which it is placed. Its use is, to divide the place in which it is fixed into two avenues, the current of air entering by the one, and returning by the other. (*Buddle, Report.*)

Shaft or main brattice is usually made of 3-inch Memel plank ; the joints so dressed that the planks, placed edgeways upon each other, may be perfectly close together, and as nearly as possible air-tight. There should also be a dowell, or iron bolt, 6 inches long and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch diameter, for every 5 feet in length of the brattice planks, passing 3 inches into the adjoining planks, for the purpose of stiffening the whole.

Common brattice is made of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch American deal, and put up into sheets, or leaves, of a size convenient for the height of the seam for which it is required. It is nailed to props set for the purpose (called brattice props) when the roof does not require propping ; but if so, the ordinary timber will do.

BRASS.—Iron pyrites found in coal : also, money.

BRIDGE-RAILS.—Malleable iron rails of the section , weighing about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. per foot. They are now much used in barrow-ways, instead of tram-plates ; the tubs being fitted up with flanced wheels.

BROKEN.—Pillar working. The partial working of pillars was commenced at Walker colliery, by the late Mr. Thomas Barnes, in 1795. Before this plan was adopted, only 40 per cent. of the coal could be obtained under a depth of 100 fathoms, 60 per cent. being lost in pillars. After its adoption, 55 per cent. were obtained, and 45 per cent. lost. Further improvements were made by Mr. Buddle, at Percy Main colliery, in 1810, by which from 80 to 90 per cent. were obtained, but an increased quantity of small coals made. During the present time, very little coal need, by proper management, be lost in pillar working. No rule can be laid down as to how pillars



should be taken off; so much depending upon situation, and the nature of the roof, thill, and coal. The principal thing to be attended to is getting the walls as quickly off as possible, and to be very careful in getting all the coal practicable clean out, so as to avoid creep.

**BULL.**—This process consists in filling a drill hole in wet stone with strong clay, and then driving a round iron rod (called a bull), nearly the size of the hole, to its far end, previous to putting in the gunpowder, for the purpose of keeping back the water oozing out of the sides of a wet hole, which would, by wetting the powder, prevent it from exploding.

**CAGE.**—A frame of iron which works between slides in a shaft, and in which, since the substitution of tubs for corves, the tubs of coals are drawn to the surface, and all passage in the shaft carried on.

**CANNEL COAL.**—A fine, compact description of coal, with a conchoidal fracture; burns with a bright flame, like a *candle*, whence, according to the late Bishop of Llandaff (Dr. Watson), its name. Its composition is as follows (*Richardson, Trans. Nat. Hist. Society, Newcastle, 1837*):—

	LANCASHIRE.			EDINBURGH.	
Carbon .....	83·789	83·698	83·808...	67·434	67·760
Hydrogen .....	„	5·677	5·643...	5·394	5·416
Azote and oxygen ..	„	8·077	8·001...	12·606	12·258
Ashes .....	2·548	2·548	2·548...	14·566	14·566
	100·000			100·000	100·000

There are some beds of cannel coal in the Newcastle coal field; and near the roof of most of the seams of coal, a few inches of cannel coal frequently occur.

**CANTEEN.**—A small wooden flat barrel, containing about half a gallon, in which a pitman carries water or coffee with him to his work.

**CAPHEAD.**—A top placed upon an air-box, used in sinking, &c., for the purpose of catching as much air as possible.

**CASH.**—A soft band ; sometimes found separating one stratum from another ; when thin, called a cashy parting.

**CATHEAD.**—An ironstone ball.

**CAVILS.**—Lots ; a periodical allotment of working places to the hewers and putters of a colliery, usually quarterly ; each person having assigned to him, by lot, that place in which he is to work during the ensuing quarter.

**CHALDRON.**—The Newcastle chaldron is a measure containing 53 cwt. of coals. The content of the chaldron waggon (Custom-house measurement) is 217,989 cubic inches ; and that of the boll being 9676·8, the chaldron is therefore equal to 22·526 bolls, and not, as usually but erroneously stated, to 24 bolls.

The statute London chaldron is to consist of 36 bushels, heaped up ; each bushel to contain a Winchester bushel and one quart, and to be  $19\frac{1}{2}$  inches diameter externally ; and as it has been found, by repeated trials, that 15 London Pool chaldrons are equal to 8 Newcastle chaldrons (*Rees' Cyclopaedia*), the London chaldron must be equal to 28·266 cwt. The content of a London chaldron has been variously estimated, viz. :—

28·266 cwt. *Beaumont's Treatise on the Coal Trade*, 1789.

27·000 cwt. *Dr. Macnab, Letters to Pitt*, 1793.

26·500 cwt. *T. Ismay, Evidence on Coal Trade*, 1800.

27·762 cwt. *W. Dickson, Evidence on the Coal Trade*, 1829. Or  $11\text{-}21\text{sts} \times 53$  cwt.

28·462 cwt. *B. Thompson, Inventions and Improvements*, 1847.

**CHALKING DEAL.**—A flat board, upon which the craneman apportions and keeps account of the work in the district of which he has charge.

**CHANGER AND GRATHER.**—A man whose province is to keep the buckets in order, and to change them when necessary.

CHISEL.—See *Bore*.

CHOKE-DAMP.—The following diagram is illustrative of the combustion of fire-damp, or carburetted hydrogen, of which the product is choke-damp, called also after-damp :—

BEFORE COMBUSTION.	ELEMENTARY MIXTURE.		PRODUCTS OF COMBUSTION.
<i>Weight.</i>	<i>Atoms.</i>	<i>Weight.</i>	<i>Weight.</i>
8 carburetted hydrogen	{ 1 carbon 1 hydrogen 1 hydrogen	6	22 carbonic acid.
		1	9 steam.
		1	9 steam.
144 atmospheric air.....	{ 1 oxygen 1 oxygen 1 oxygen 1 oxygen 8 nitrogen	8	
		8	
		8	
		8	
		112	112 uncombined nit.
152		152	152 choke damp.

(*Williams, Combustion of Coal.*)

This gas, which is the result of an explosion of fire-damp, is most deleterious, and causes more deaths in the proportion of three to one. (*R. Elliott, Evid. on Accidents in Mines, 1835.*)

CLACK.—The low valve of a pump. Its use is to support the column of water when the bucket is descending.

CLAM.—A moveable collaring for a pump, consisting of two pieces of wood indented to receive the pump, and screw-bolted together.

CLEAT.—The vertical joints or facings in coal or stone. There are frequently two cleats in coal, at which, when distinct, the coal may be broken into rhomboidal fragments. These cleats do not always intersect each other at the same angle. Thus, the angles in the Brockwell seam, at West Auckland colliery, are 100 deg. and 80 deg.; in the Five-quarry seam, at Black Boy, 122 deg. 20 min. and 57 deg. 14 min.; and in the High Main, at Willington colliery, 114 deg. 14 min.

103 deg. 24 min. and 76 deg. 36 min. The following are taken from 37 observations :—

*Table of Directions of Cleats in Coal in Newcastle Coal Field.*

0	W. by N.
3	W. NW.
2	NW. by W.
5	NW.
1	NW. by N.
3	N. NW.
7	N. by W.
9	N.
0	N. by E.
2	N. NE.
0	NE. by N.
0	NE.
0	NE. by E.
0	E. NE.
0	E. by N.
5	E.

**CLIPPERS.**—The hook used, in sinking, to attach the rope to the corf, when the same is required to be sent to the surface, or down the pit. It is constructed with a piece of flat iron, connected by a hinge joint with the turned up end of the hook, which is also flat. When the corf-bow is placed in the hook, this piece of flat iron is put down, and kept in its place by an iron spring attached to the shank of the hook, and which requires to be pressed back before the corf can be liberated.

**COAL-PIPE.**—The carbonized bark of a fossil plant ; also a very thin seam or scare of coal.

**COLLARING.**—A framing composed usually of pieces of cross timber, placed under the pump joints in a shaft, for the purpose of steadying and supporting the set.

**CORF.**—A basket made of hazel, of the capacity of from 10 to 30 pecks, used for conveying coals from the working places to the surface. Leading corves are small corves, containing about 6 or 8 pecks, and are used for carrying stones or rubbish to a stow-board. Since the introduction of tubs for conveying coals underground, the use of corves has, in a great measure, ceased.

**COUP.**—An exchange of cavils. To be valid, it must be with the consent of the overman.



COMPASS.—A pit compass will be found most useful when divided simply into four quadrants, reckoning 90 deg. each way from the north and south points marked upon the dial. In all careful surveying underground, the tram-plates, or other iron or metal way, ought to be taken up for at least four yards on each side of the compass. It is also advisable always to read off the course from the north end of the needle—always to look through the same sights (the low ones are preferable)—and to survey the same colliery always as nearly as possible at the same time of day, the diurnal variation of the needle being far from inconsiderable. The following table shews the diurnal variation taken at different hours of the 27th June, 1759, by Mr. Canton. (*Phil. Trans.*, vol. 51.)

	Hrs.	min.	Declination west.	Degrees of Fahrenheit's Th.
Morning, ...	0	18	18 deg. 2 min.	62
	6	4	18 deg. 58 min.	62
	8	30	18 deg. 55 min.	65
	9	2	18 deg. 54 min.	67
	10	20	18 deg. 57 min.	69
	11	40	19 deg. 4 min.	68½
Afternoon,	0	50	19 deg. 9 min.	70
	1	38	19 deg. 8 min.	70
	3	10	19 deg. 8 min.	68
	7	20	18 deg. 59 min.	61
	9	12	19 deg. 6 min.	59
	11	40	18 deg. 51 min.	57½

At present (1849), the variation is 24 deg. west of the true meridian.

COURSING.—Conducting the air backwards and forwards through old workings, by means of stoppings, properly arranged. Air is usually coursed or shethed “two and two,” or “three and three,” according to the greater or less quantity of fire-damp evolved; the meaning being that the current, in the former case, is conducted up two boards and down two, by means of stoppings, called sheth stoppings, placed in every second wall in each headway’s course; every alternate

line of walls, in which the stoppings are placed, being open, either at the top or bottom of the sheth, so as to afford the air a free passage : that is to say, suppose it be required to course the air two and two in a pannel of twelve boards, and the air to enter at the *bottom* of the first board, the following sheth stoppings will be required : one in the second, sixth, and tenth wall, in every headway's course, except the highest (or, preferably, the two highest); and one in the fourth and eighth wall in every headway's course, except the lowest (or, preferably, the two lowest). The going headway's course, at the face, is frequently made a part of the course ; the stoppings being replaced by doors, called sheth doors ; but it is far better to conduct the air singly along the face headway's course, by means of board-end stoppings, and course the air behind these stoppings, as described above. This, besides saving the expense of the sheth doors, keeps the air at the face in a purer and better state.

Where the pillars are worked away behind the whole, which is the most approved plan, there are comparatively no old workings to course ; and, consequently, the above expense is saved. Also, by shortening the run of the air, and consequently the resistance to its motion, a larger quantity is brought into the mine, and the whole placed in a more efficiently ventilated and safer condition.

Cow.—A wooden or iron fork, hung loosely upon the last waggon of a set, ascending an inclined plane. Its use is to stick into the ground, and stop the set, in case of the rope breaking.

CRAB.—A species of capstan, worked usually by horses, for the purpose of raising or lowering heavy weights, such as pumps, spears, &c., in a shaft. Ground crabs are used in sinking, for lowering the sinking set of pumps as the pit is deepened. The sinking set is collared to two sets of spears, called ground spears ; one spear on each side of the set. At the top of each spear is one of a pair of three, five, or

sevenfold blocks, called ground blocks; the others being placed near the pit mouth; and the pumps are lowered by means of the ground ropes, which pass through these blocks to the ground crabs. These crabs are worked by men, and are of very great power.

**CRADLE.**—A moveable stage, supported by a rope, used to repair or do work in the shaft.

**CRANE.**—Used to hoist the corves of coals from the tram to the rolley; the coals being put by the barrow-men from the working places to the crane, and drawn thence by horses to the shaft. Upon the introduction of tubs, attached to trams, for the conveyance of coals, they were run on to the rolleys, which were constructed with dish plates, so as to keep the tubs in their places during their passage to the shaft; the place where they were put on the rolleys being called a Flat. The tubs themselves are now, in a great measure, drawn by horses along the rolleyways, without the intervention of rolleys; and the place where they are taken by the horses from the barrow-man is called a Station.

**CRANEMAN.**—A lad 16 or 18 years of age, whose business is to hoist the corves of coals on to the rolleys with the crane. He also proportions the work, or quantity of coals to be put by the barrow-men, among them; so that each lad may know to which places he is to go for coals, and the quantity he is to put from such places. On the introduction of tubs and flats, a younger description of lads was sufficient, say 15 or 16 years of age. These were named flat-lads; a name which, at the stations, they still retain.

**CREEP.**—The rising up of the floor in excavations in a seam of coal, occasioned by the pillars not being left sufficient, or having a sufficiently large surface to prevent their being forced into the thill by the superincumbent pressure. The rising up of dough or clay between the hands, when pressed upon it, will illustrate this. The softer the thill, the greater the liability to

creep. The progressive stages of creep have been well described by Mr. Buddle (*Evidence on Coal Trade*, 1-29). "The first appearance is a little curvature in the bottom of each gallery : that is the first symptom we can perceive ; but we can generally hear it before we can perceive it. The next stage is when the pavement begins to open with a crack longitudinally. The next stage is when that crack is completed, and it assumes the shape of a metal ridge. The next is when the metal ridge reaches the roof. The next stage is when the peak of the metal ridge becomes flattened by pressure, and forced into a horizontal position, and becomes quite close : just at this moment, the coal pillars begin to sustain part of the pressure. The next is when the coal pillars have taken part of the pressure. The last stage is, when it is dead, or settled ; that is, when the metal ridge, or factitious ridge formed by the sinking of the pillar into the pavement, bears, in common with the pillars of coal on each side, the full pressure, and the coal becomes crushed or cracked, and can be no longer worked, except by a very expensive and dangerous process."

CRIB.—Common cribs are circles of wood, usually oak, from 4 to 6 inches square, and are used to support the sides of a pit when the stone is bad.

A wedging crib is a large crib, made of metal or oak, always used as a foundation for metal tubbing, and frequently for walling. These cribs, which are from 12 to 14 inches in the bed, and 6 or 7 inches deep, in a large pit, are, when of metal, cast hollow, and weigh about 1 cwt. per running foot. They are set to the centre of the pit by baff-ends and spares, and are then wedged from the back till they are perfectly firm and tight.

A ring crib may be made of metal or oak, of the same size as a wedging crib. It is open at the top, for the purpose of collecting water, which would otherwise fall down the pit. For a few feet up above the crib, the side of the shaft is bevelled or cut away



to the back part of the channel, so as to allow the water to drain into it. This cutting is also necessary to allow the crib to be wedged. The water is then boxed away from the crib down the pit to the standage, or elsewhere if required.

CRIBLE.—To curry favour.

CROP.—The basset or outburst of a seam of coal or other stratum ; also, to leave a portion of coal at the bottom of a seam in working.

CROSSCUT.—An excavation driven at an acute angle to the direction of the cleavage or cleat.

CROSSING—An air crossing is an arched way of wood or bricks, by which one current of air crosses over another current, or over the same current after having traversed its district. The area of the airway upon a crossing should, in every case, be fully as large as its ordinary dimensions. The best air crossings, as taking up the least room, are made with the roof of 3-inch plank, slivered at the joints, or with laths nailed upon the joints at the top side ; the whole covered with a coating of lime. They have sometimes, on account of their liability to destruction in cases of explosion, been constructed with the cover to work with a hinge, so as to admit of its rising, when exposed to a blast, and again falling to its place.

CRUSH.—This occurs when both the roof and thill of a seam of coal are hard, and when the pillars, insufficient for the support of the superincumbent strata, are crushed by their pressure. The coal is much more injured in this way than by creep.

CROWNTREE.—A plank about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick, and 6 or 8 inches broad, of the length of 5 or 6 feet, used to support the roof in coal workings ; each end of the crowntree being supported by a prop. Crowntrees are best made of larch, as being most durable : they are also made of Scotch fir. The price may be from 30s. to 35s. per hundred.

CURVING.—See *Kirving*.

DANT.—Soft sooty coal found at backs, and at the leaders of hitches and troubles.

DARG.—A fixed quantity of coal to be worked for a certain price. This word is seldom heard in the Newcastle mines, but is the general term in use about Berwick. It is equivalent to the hewing or score price of the Newcastle collieries.

DASHING AIR.—Mixing air and gas together, until, by being completely incorporated, the mixture ceases to be inflammable. This is done by giving the air, after its first union with the fire-damp, a considerable length of run or course.

DAVY LAMP.—A safety lamp, invented by the late Sir Humphrey Davy, in 1815. It consists of an oil cistern of copper, brass, or other material, containing the wick, and protected by a close-topped cylinder of wire gauze, within which fire-damp may explode and burn, but without communicating flame to the gas without the cylinder. The cylinder should not exceed  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch in diameter, and may be 8 inches in length. (*Vide Sir Humphrey Davy on the Safety Lamp, and on Flame, &c.*) The only case in which the Davy lamp is stated to be unsafe is, when exposed to a rapid current of explosive atmosphere.

The first safety lamp was invented by Dr. William Reid Clanny, of Sunderland, in May, 1813; in which the flame of the lamp was insulated, and supplied with air by means of a small pair of bellows. This lamp was first tried in the Harrington Mill pit, Nov. 20, 1815.

Safety lamps have also been contrived by Mr. Brandling, and Dr. J. Murray, of Edinburgh; but being dependent upon a circumstance which does not exist, viz., a regular arrangement of gases in the order of their specific gravities, they are not of any practical utility.

At about the same time with Sir Humphrey Davy, Mr. Stephenson, then an engineer at Killingworth colliery, invented a safety lamp, of which the principle

is essentially the same as the Davy. The application is slightly different; the flame of the lamp being surrounded by a cylinder of glass (since surrounded by one of wire gauze), and the air admitted to the lamp by means of apertures in the ring at the bottom of the cylinder. The principle upon which both lamps depend, viz., the impassibility of flame through small tubes, was probably discovered simultaneously by both Sir Humphrey Davy and Mr. Stephenson; but the application of wire gauze must belong exclusively to the former. Other lamps have also been contrived, namely, Messrs. Upton and Roberts', Martin's, Mueseler's, and Clanny's, &c.; but as the whole of these are to be referred for their safety to the use of small tubes, or wire gauze, they are, though in some cases possessing great merit, nothing more than modifications of Davy's or Stephenson's lamp.

**DAYHOLE.**—An adit or level driven in at the side of a hill, for the purpose of working the minerals lying within it.

**DAYSHIFT.**—When a pit is worked both night and day, it is said to be worked double shift; the set of men employed during the day being called the day-shift, and that employed at night the nightshift.

**DEAD.**—Unventilated.

**DEPUTIES.**—A set of men employed in setting timber for the safety of the workmen; also in putting in brattice and brattice stoppings. They also draw the props from places where they are not required for further use. Their wages are about 20s. per week. There cannot be any fixed rule for the number of deputies to be employed in a pit; this depending altogether upon the nature of the roof, and consequent quantity of timber required to be set for its support; also upon the greater or less quantity of fire-damp produced by the coal. Upon an average, the number of deputies may be stated at one for every 7 or 8 scores of 6 tons each.

**DIAGONAL STAPLE.**—A staple sunk diagonally in the line of the back end of the main beam of a pumping engine, and a point in the pumping shaft, which may vary from 10 to 20 fathoms from the surface. Its use is to divide the work of the engine between the two ends of the beam, by means of a lever beam in the shaft, placed in a hole, made for the purpose, at the bottom of the diagonal staple. The spears working the low set are hung from the lever end, and are also connected by the diagonal spear, passing through the diagonal staple from the same point to the inner end of the beam. The high set is, of course, in this case, attached to the outer end of the beam. The result of this arrangement is, that when the inner end of the beam ascends, it draws up the diagonal spear, lever, or V-bob (as it is called), and low set of spears; the out end of the beam and high set descending, and *vice versa*.

**DIP.**—Declivity of the strata or coal seams.

**DIRT.**—A term used to express foulness or fire-damp.

**DOOR.**—Doors are used underground, where, unless a passage were occasionally required, stoppings would be necessary. They are usually placed in pairs, one being at a few yards distance from the other, so that when one is open, the other may be closed. Several different descriptions of doors are employed, of which are the following :—

a. *Frame door.* A frame door is set in a proper frame, made for the purpose. It only opens in one direction, viz., *against* the current of air, and should always be hung so as to fall to, should any one passing through it neglect to draw it close. Frame doors are always placed in rolleyways, and should be made not less than 6 feet in height, and may be 5 feet in width. The stanchions should be built up with bricks. Frame doors, placed in the barrow-way, should be similarly set, and of sufficient size to allow of the passage of the tubs or corves. Man doors,



which are placed for convenience of communication between different currents of air, are small frame doors, which need not be more than 18 or 20 inches square, and should be furnished with screw locks, the keys of which should only be in the possession of the overman or master wasteman. Rolley and tramway doors are attended by trappers.

b. *Fly doors*, or *swing doors*, should also be set in proper frames, and so constructed as always to fall close when left alone, but to open either towards or from the current of air, according to the direction of the force exerted to open them. With these doors, trappers are unnecessary.

A *bearing or main door*, is a door which forces the air through an entire district. This should be a frame door. A *sheth door* is placed in a going headways course, where otherwise a sheth stopping would be necessary. This may be either a frame or a fly door, as thought proper.

DOUBLE WORKING.—Two hewers working together in a board or wall. An addition of 3d. or 4d. per score is frequently made to the hewing price, for the inconvenience supposed to be attached to this manner of working.

DOWELL.—An iron bolt, sometimes used in putting main brattice together; a portion of the bolt being let into the under plank, and the remainder passing into a hole in the upper plank. (See *Brattice*.)

DRAG.—A piece of iron or wood, put between the spokes of a tub or rolley-wheel, to check their progress where the dip of the way is considerable.

DREDGE SUMP.—A reservoir through which a current of water is sometimes made to flow before passing to a pump, in order that any small stones or sludge may be retained, so as not to fill up or obstruct the water passage into the pump, or wear away the bucket.

DRIFT.—In coal, an exploring place; usually, a pair of drifts are driven simultaneously, for the purpose of ventilation. In stone, sometimes for the

purpose of exploring, but more frequently rendered necessary by the occurrence of dislocations in the strata.

**DRILL.**—A rod of iron, with a chisel end, used in boring a hole in coal or stone, in which powder is to be placed for blasting. The hammer used in drilling a hole, is called a drilling hammer.

**DUFF.**—Small coals, from which, by means of the apparatus, the nuts have been separated.

**DYKE.**—A fissure in the strata, filled with basalt and detritus from other rocks; sometimes accompanied by a dislocation or fault.

**EAT OUT.**—This expression is applied when a level coal drift is turned to the dip, in order to take advantage of (or “eat out”) a rise hitch.

**ETTLE.**—To intend, appoint, arrange.

**FACE.**—The innermost extremity of a place working into the solid coal or stone.

**FACING.**—A cleat.

**FALL.**—A dropping down of the roof stone.

**FAST WALL.**—A sheth wall; the wall in which, at the top or bottom of a course, the bearing up or bearing down stopping is placed. (See *Coursing*.)

**FEEDER.**—A spring or runner of water.

**FIRE-DAMP.**—Light carburetted hydrogen gas. It is found in most coal mines; most abundant in the vicinity of slips and dykes. It is only explosive when mixed with from 5 to 14 times its bulk of atmospheric air. Its specific gravity is 0.5594. It is fatal to animal life when in a concentrated state, but, when mixed with air, may be respired to a great extent without apparent injury. It may be procured artificially by distilling, in a coated glass flask, at a red heat, the following mixture:—

1 part of stick potassa.

1 part of dried acetate of soda.

1½ part of quick lime.

All rubbed to fine powder and well dried.

**FISSLE, FISTLE.**—To make a crepitant noise or faint crackling. This takes place in early stages of creep.

**FLANCH.**—The crease or raised part of the rim of a waggon-wheel. Also, broad rims at the end of "flanch'd" pumps, by means of bolt holes through which, the pumps are bolted together. Before the bolts are put in, weizes, made of rope or spunyarn, or of lead, are put between the flanches ; when of lead, they should be caulked, after being screwed up.

**FLAT.**—See *Crane*.

**FLAT-LAD.**—See *Craneman*.

**FOAL.**—See *Headsman*.

**FOLLOWING IN.**—Is when one man works after another in the same place. The same consideration attaches to it as to double working.

**FOTHER.**—A measure of coals, being one-third of a chaldron, or  $17\frac{2}{3}$  cwt. ; a good single horse cart load.

**FOUL.**—In an inflammable state, from fire-damp having accumulated.

**FRAME-DAM.**—A dam made of wood, and of various thickness, say from 3 to 8 feet, according to the pressure and size of the place in which it is required to be placed. A frame-dam is formed of balks of fir wood, placed endwise against the pressure, and tapered, but with the top and bottom surfaces parallel, and accurately dressed and numbered. The coal in a drift where it is proposed to place a dam, should be perfectly sound and strong, and should be cut back at each side, and dressed true to the sweep of the circle to which the balks of wood are cut. When the balks of wood are all in their places, the joints are firmly wedged until the whole is perfectly tight. It would add to the security of these dams, if eight or ten yards of strong ashlar walling were put in behind them, commencing, at five or six yards back from the dams, to notch the stone work into the coal walls, so as to bind the whole together. A small pipe, of, say, half an inch diameter, left in the dam, and *open*,

would be a further security still ; or if the dam were at no great distance from a shaft, an inch or inch and a half pipe might be placed in the dam, and carried up the shaft so far as to outset the water. This precaution is found to add to the security of metal tubing, where great pressure and large feeders of water are contended with ; and, in the case of dams, no doubt, would be equally beneficial.

**FUR, FURRING.**—The deposit of carbonate of lime from limestone water, in pumps, boilers, &c.

**FURNACE.**—A large fire, placed near the bottom of the upcast shaft, which, by rarefying the air contained in the upcast, causes that disturbance of equilibrium between its column and a column of cold air of equal length, which occasions a constant current of air to travel to and up the upcast shaft. This current is, by proper arrangements, employed to ventilate the colliery workings. The size of a furnace will, of course, vary with the requirements of the mine in which it is to be placed. Thus, a furnace 6 feet in width, which, in one seam of coal, and for the confined workings of a small colliery, would be ample, would be found quite inadequate to cause an efficient ventilation of extended workings in a fiery seam of coal. A furnace of the width of 10 feet, with the bars 6 feet long—the height above the bars to be 5 feet, with the arch elliptical—the area of the furnace drift to the upcast shaft to be not less than 50 square feet, and to rise from the back of the furnace to the shaft at the rate of 1 in 3—the whole being well attended to—will, in most cases, be sufficient for any mine, however fiery. In extreme cases, two furnaces may be constructed.

**FURTHERANCE.**—4d. per score paid, in addition to the putting price, to hewers for putting.

**GAS.**—Usually carburetted hydrogen. Occasionally, sulphuretted hydrogen has been found in old wastes : this is easily detected, where present, by its smell. Carbonic acid gas, or stythe, is frequently



found in great abundance in coal mines, especially where the seams wrought are found at moderate depths from the surface. And a pernicious gas has been occasionally found to issue from old wastes, which is fatal to animal life, but in which a candle will continue to burn with undiminished brilliancy. This has been considered by some to be owing to a mixture of sulphuretted hydrogen with atmospheric air, 1-50th part\* of which may produce a compound possessing the above properties; but as, in a case of this nature which occurred at Hartley colliery, the well-known smell of sulphuretted hydrogen was not distinguished, we must look a little further for the composition of this gas. May not some cause occasion the decomposition of the carbonic acid gas in an old waste, and the formation of sufficient carbonic oxide to produce the above effect? Or, may not the absorption of oxygen from the atmospheric air of the waste produce a mixture, containing an excess of azote, which would still support combustion, but be fatal to animal life?

GALLOWES TIMBER.—A crown-tree, with a prop placed under each end.

GEAR.—Work-tools, consisting of picks, drills, maul and wedge, shovel, cracket, &c.

GEARS, PAIR OF.—See *Gallows Timber*.

GIN.—An apparatus, consisting of a drum fixed upon a vertical shaft, to which a lever, called a

\* Thénard found that air, which contained only 1-800th of its volume of this gas, would destroy a dog; and that when the gas existed in the proportion of 1-250th, it sufficed to destroy a horse. The later researches of M. Parent Duchâtelet would, however, seem to show that the poisonous effects of this gas have been somewhat exaggerated, at least in the application of these results to man. He observed that workmen breathed with impunity an atmosphere containing 1-100th part of sulphuretted hydrogen; and he states that he himself respired, without serious symptoms ensuing, air which contained 3 per cent. An atmosphere containing from 6 to 8 per cent. of the gas, might speedily kill; although nothing certain is known of the proportion required to destroy human life. (*Taylor, Manual of Medical Jurisprudence.*)

"start" is attached. A horse, yoked to the end of the lever, and moving in a circular track, causes the drum to revolve, and to wind or unwind a rope working over a pulley into a pit, or where required. Gins are constructed with the barrel from 3 or 4 to 18 feet diameter. Large-sized ones are usually worked by two horses, yoked abreast. Before the application of the steam-engine to drawing coals, gins were used for this purpose.

GOAF.—A space from which the coal pillars have been extracted. It is usually a large dome, resting upon the wreck which has fallen from the roof of the exhausted space.

GOING BOARD.—When the crane, flat, or station is not at the end of the headways course at the face, the coals are brought down a board for one, two, or more pillars, as the case may be, to the crane. This board is called the going (or "gannen") board.

GRATHE.—To put in order, to dress; to replace a worn bucket-leather.

GRATHELY.—Trim, tidy.

GROUND ROPES.—See *Crab*.

GROUND SPEARS.—See *Crab*.

HACK.—A heavy and obtuse-pointed pick, of the length of 18 inches, and weight of 7 lbs., used in sinking or stone work.

HADE.—The slope or inclination of the leader of a slip-dyke.

HAND-FILL.—To separate the small from the large coals in the mine; the latter only being filled by the hand into the tub or corf.

HANG.—To incline or dip.

HAUD OFF.—Hold off; keep back; spoken by a barrowman putting a full tub to one meeting him with an empty one, the latter being obliged to get out of the way.

HEADSMAN.—A lad not strong enough to put alone, but able to do so with the assistance of a little boy, who performs his part by pulling the tub by a couple

of ropes or traces attached thereto, and called *soams*. This little boy is called a *foal*. He sometimes assists the headsman by pushing behind the tub beside him. The wages made by the headsman, who is 16 or 17 years of age, are about 2s. 9d. per day of 12 hours; the foal being paid from 1s. to 14d. per day.

HEAD-TREE.—A piece of a crowntree, a foot long, placed upon a prop to support the roof; the head-tree being to extend the bearance of the prop.

HEADWAYS.—The direction of the cleat; also, a place or holing driven in this direction.

HEADWAYS COURSE.—A line of walls or holings, extending from side to side of a pannel of boards.

HEAVE.—To creep.

HELPER UP.—A lad employed to assist the barrowman out of a dip place.

HEWER.—A man who works coals. His age ranges from 21 to 70. His usual wages are from 3s. 9d. to 4s. 3d. per day of 8 hours working, and his average employment 4 or 5 days in the week. He also has, as part of his wages, a house containing two or three rooms, according to his family, and frequently a garden, of which the average size may be 6 or 8 perches; also a fother of small coals each fortnight, for the leading of which he pays sixpence.

HITCH.—A sudden elevation or depression of the strata, to the extent of from a few inches to the thickness of the working seam of coal. When of a larger size, it is called a *slip dyke*.

HOGGER.—A wide leather pipe used to deliver water into a cistern.

HOGGER-PUMP.—The top pump of a set, with a short pipe cast on to it at right angles near the top. The hogger is attached to the short pipe.

HOGGERS—Stockings without feet, chiefly used by the barrowmen.

JACK.—During sinking, whilst two pits or a pit and a staple are being sunk simultaneously by means

of two gins, one of them, to prevent mistakes, is usually called a jack.

**JACK-ROLL.**—A winch.

**JENKING.**—A fast jenking is a narrow place, driven lengthways in a pillar of coal, but unholed into the board at either side of the pillar. A loose jenking is a similar place, driven along the side of a pillar, and open to the board along that side. These places are mostly driven in working pillars. Wherever practicable, when a jenking is necessary, it should be driven loose sided; a fast jenking very frequently causing a creeping to take place, and almost invariably rendering that pillar or wall, in which it is driven, crushed and useless; although to this there are exceptions.

**JET.**—A species of coarse cannel coal, nearly approaching to a black shale. It burns with a bright flame, but loses little bulk in the fire.

**INBYE.**—In the workings, or away from the shaft.

**INCLINE.**—Used underground, either worked by an engine when to the dip, or self-acting when to the rise. Where the inclination of the seam is sufficient to admit of a self-acting plane being employed, it is an economical mode of transit, especial motive power being thus dispensed with.

An underground self-acting plane should not have a less inclination than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch to the yard, 1 inch being barely sufficient to cause motion. According to Mr. B. Thompson, 8 loaden chaldron waggons, descending a plane of  $\frac{5}{8}$ ths of an inch per yard, will bring up 8 empty ones at a good working speed. 6 loaden waggons require a fall of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch to the yard; and 4 loaden waggons require  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch to the yard. (*Inventions, Improvements, and Practice*, p. 98.)

**INSENSE.**—This word means more than to explain: it means the making the person, to whom the explanation is given, *thoroughly understand such explanation*.

**INSPECTOR.**—A man employed at the surface to attend to the cleaning and skreening of the coals.



His wages are usually 3s. per day, or 18s. per week, with house and firing free.

An underground inspector is required to attend to the working of the coals, and to see that proper pains are taken to make them large and good. He is also required to attend to the straight driving or holing of the places, and to set on compass marks for the purpose. The back overman, where a colliery is not infested with fire-damp, and his time and attention sufficiently engaged in attending to the safety of the mine, performs the above duties during his shift. The wages of an inspector are 21s. or 22s. per week, with house and firing.

INTAKE.—The airway along which the fresh air is conducted into a place, district, or mine.

JOWL.—A sort of "tattoo," beaten alternately upon the face of two places or drifts near holing, or intended to hole into each other, by a person in each place, for the purpose of ascertaining, by the sound, their relative positions.

JUD.—A portion of the seam, kirved, nicked, and ready for blasting; also, a portion of a pillar in course of being worked away in the broken mine.

JUMP.—To drill a hole for the purpose of blasting; but instead of using a drill and hammer separately, the drill is made of a greater length, and the opposite end from the chisel end swelled out to make it heavy, and the drill driven by hand. This plan of drilling has been introduced by south country miners into the northern collieries, but is not much practised.

KEEKER.—See *Inspector*.

KEEL.—A vessel used to carry coals, from the staiths on the Tyne or Wear, to ships lying about Shields or Sunderland. Keels are broad, flat vessels, sharp at each end, and carrying 8 Newcastle chaldrons of coals, or 21 tons 4 cwt.

KEEPS.—Moveable frames or supports of iron, which, if left free, project about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch into the shaft top at each side, immediately beneath the level of the

settle boards. Their use is to support the cage containing the tubs of coals when drawn to the surface, the cage rising between the keeps, and forcing them back ; but when drawn above the keeps, they fall forward to their places, forming a rest for the cage until the full tubs are replaced by empty ones. The keeps are then drawn back by a lever by the banksman, and the cage allowed to return down the shaft.

KENNER.—An expression signifying time to give up work, shouted down the shaft by the banksman where practicable, and conveyed into the workings from mouth to mouth.

KIBBLE.—A wooden tub, usually square, and of the capacity of about 20 gallons, used in conveying rubbish from one place to another : it is placed upon a tram. It is frequently made with a bow, similar to a corf bow, and is used in sinking, &c.

KINK.—To curl into a kind of knot, as highly twisted rope, especially wire rope, does.

KIRVING.—A wedge-shaped excavation, made by the hewer with his picks at the lower part of the seam, previous to blasting. A kirving should seldom be less than 36 inches from the commencement to the far side, nor exceed 16 inches in height at the fore-side, in a hard coal : in a soft coal, with a good parting at the bottom, it may be less. The coals obtained from the kirving are always small ; and as the size of the kirving is pretty constant, and irrespective of the thickness of the seam, it follows that a greater per centage of small is made in working a thin than a thick seam of coal, the hardness of the two seams being similar.

KIST.—A chest. The deputies' kist is used to keep their tools, plate and brattice nails, &c., in.

KITTY.—A piece of straw, about 4 inches long, filled with gunpowder. It is placed in the pricker hole, which is left open to the cartridge or *shot*, which is placed in the drill-hole ; and the end of the kitty next to the cartridge being closed, and the outer end

open, it follows that when a light is applied to the latter, the kitty flies along the pricker hole, and ignites the gunpowder.

**LAI D OUT.**—A laid out tub of coals is a tub of coals containing stones or foul coal beyond a certain specified quantity, usually one quart; the hewer of such tub being fined from 3d. upwards, according to the amount of such stones, &c., found in the tub.

**LAMESKIRTING.**—Taking coal off the side of an excavation, to make a narrow place wide, or a wide one wider. The term is peculiar to the Etherley district.

**LANDRY BOX.**—A wooden box, placed at the top of a set of pumps, into which the water is delivered, and spouted to where required.

**LAYERED.**—Choked up with mud; commonly applied to the falls of a bucket or clack, thus prevented from working.

**LEADER.**—The gut of a hitch or slip dyke.

**LEASE.**—A formal agreement, for a term of years, between the proprietor of a coal district, and an adventurer or adventurers, who work the mine. Leases are for various terms, usually from 21 to 63 years; and generally with powers, on the part of the lessees, to relinquish at the end of any year, or third year, on giving twelve months' previous notice. Leases under the Bishop of Durham, and the Dean and Chapter of Durham, are held for original terms of 21 years, with power to the lessees, upon payment of a fine, to renew their lease at the end of the 7th year, so as again to have a 21 years' lease. The fine is one and a half year's purchase of the estimated annual rental the mine is worth to let; or, more correctly, the present worth of such rental, considered as an annuity for 7 years, to commence 14 years hence, allowing the purchaser 9 per cent. per annum: this is equal to 1.5060 year's purchase.

**LED.**—A led tub or corf means a spare one, for the barrowman to leave empty with the hewer, whilst the full one is being put to the flat or crane; the empty

one being filled by the hewer against the return of the barrowman with another empty one.

**LEVEL.**—A drain cut in the bottom stone, to set away or convey water. A pair of levels are a pair of drifts, driven in the water-level direction of the coal, for the purpose of winning coal.

**LIFT.**—To heave at the bottom ; to creep. Also, a column, or parallel columns, of pumps. Also, a broken jud. (See *Jud.*)

**LIG.**—To lie down.

**LIP OF SHAFT.**—The bottom edge of a shaft circle, where open to the seam workings.

**LIPPEN.**—To reckon or calculate upon.

**LOFTING**—Wood, usually old pieces, placed upon the top of the ordinary balks or crowntrees used in timbering through a fallen place, for the purpose of keeping up the loose stones, which would otherwise fall down between the common timbering. This mode of timbering is practised in close drifting through a heavy fall, which is less expensive than ridding. Lofting is also frequently used when a place is ridded, part of the stones being conveniently stowed upon the timber.

**LOOSE** (“LOWSE”)!—Finish working ! See *Kenner*.

**Low.**—A light.

**LOW-ROPE.**—A piece of tarry rope, used as a torch.

**LUM.**—A chimney placed upon an upcast pit.

**MACHINE.**—The engine for drawing coals. They are usually constructed high pressure ; but condensing engines, although in the first instance more expensive, are much cheaper in the end, the repairs of the boilers being comparatively trifling, and the labour in firing less. A ready rule for calculating the power of a high pressure engine, having given the diameter of the cylinder and the pressure of the steam, is as follows :—

Square the diameter of the cylinder in inches, multiply by the pressure in lbs. per square inch, and divide the product by 400.



Having the same data with a condensing engine, the rule is :—

Square the diameter of the cylinder, multiply by the pressure in lbs. per square inch, and divide the product by 222.

MAIN ENGINE.—The pumping engine, usually condensing. The following is the rule for finding the quantity of water which an engine will pump from a given depth :—

Let  $H$  = horse-power of engine.

$F$  = depth of pit in fathoms.

$G$  = quantity of water in gallons per minute.

Then,  $\frac{H \times 550}{F} = G$ .

And having any two of the above data given, the third can be found.

MAKINGS.—The small coals hewed out in kirving.

MAN-DOOR.—See *Door*.

MARROW.—A partner.

MATCH.—A small piece of candle end, or greased twine or tape, placed horizontally beneath the kitty used to ignite the gunpowder in blasting. When every thing is ready, the workman applies a light to the point of the match, which he has made of sufficient size, and placed in such a position as to occupy time enough before the flame reaches the kitty to allow him to retire to a safe place.

MAUL.—A hammer used in driving a wedge to force down coal or stone ; also used in drilling in stone, to drive in the drill.

MAVIES.—It may be ; perhaps.

METAL.—Shale.

METAL RIDGE.—See *Creep*.

METAL STONE.—A mixture of shale with sandstone,

MISTRESS.—An oblong box, wanting the front side, carried upright ; the use of which is to carry a lighted candle in a current of air.

MOTHERGATE.—The continuation of the rolleyway

into the workings ; or the place in the workings that will, at a future period, be converted into rolleyway.

**NARROW WORK.**—Excavations, 3 yards in width and under, for which, above the hewing price, an extra price of so much per yard is paid.

**NATTLE.**—See *Fistle*.

**NIGHTSHIFT.**—See *Dayshift*.

**NIP.**—The effect produced upon coal pillars by creep ; a crush or squeeze. Also, an approach of the roof and thill of a seam of coal towards each other, found naturally ; the seam having, for a short distance, been occasioned almost to disappear.

**NOOK** (“ NEUK ”).—One of the corners of a working place at the face ; also, the corner of a pillar of coal.

**ONSETTERS.**—Men who put the full tubs in, and take the empty ones out of the cage, at the shaft bottom. They are paid by the score : their average wages amount to about 4s. per day of twelve hours.

**OPENCAST.**—A cutting in stone, coal, &c., at the top or bottom of an excavation already made, and open to that place.

**OUTBURST, OUTCROP.**—The rising out of a stratum to the surface, or its appearance at the surface, occasioned by the declination of the latter.

**OVERGATE.**—See *Crossing*.

**OVERMAN.**—The person who, beneath the viewer, has the charge of the workings of a colliery. He sets the pit to work each morning ; and attends to all the detail of arranging the work, and getting the coals each man works to the shaft bottom. It is also his duty to see that each working place is properly ventilated, and in a safe state. He also keeps a daily account of the work wrought, and fortnightly makes up, and delivers at the colliery office, an account of the coals worked, and the whole of the underground expenses, for the preceding fortnight ; this bill containing the amount earned by each man and boy during that time. There is one overman to a pit ; so that if there are two or three pits at a colliery, there

are two or three overmen. An overman is almost invariably a man who has passed through all the gradations of pit-work, from the trapper upwards, and who has been raised to his situation on account of his ability and steadiness. His wages, at an extensive colliery, should not be less than 26s. or 28s. per week ; with house and garden, and coals gratis.

OVERWORKINGS.—See *Rent*.

PAIR OF GEARS.—See *Gallows Timber*.

PARROT COAL.—Nearly the same with *Cannel Coal*, which see.

PICK.—An instrument used in hewing coal. It consists of an iron head, 18 inches long, and sharp at each end, weighing from 3 to 6 lbs. In the centre of the head is a shaft of ash, of the length of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet. The hewer finds his own picks, but has them sharpened and set out for him by the colliery smith, employed for the purpose, paying to him in return 1d. per fortnight.

PILLAR.—An oblong or square mass of coal, contained between two boards and two headways courses, and left during the first working for the support of the roof. Pillars vary from 20 to 40 yards in length, and from 2 to 20 yards in thickness. When left so thin as 2 or 3 yards, they are not, unless the mine is very shallow indeed, intended to be worked away.

PILLAR WORKING.—See *Broken*.

PIT.—A circular, oval, square, or oblong vertical sinking from the surface. The term shaft, which is often used as synonymous, may either be a pit, or only a portion of one, severed off by means of a vertical or main brattice. A pit may thus be divided into two or three shafts. Thus, “a pit divided by a brattice into two shafts, viz., a coal and an engine or water shaft,” is a correct expression.

PLACING WORK.—An operation performed by the craneman, for the purpose of ascertaining the coals hewed by which hewer, each barrowman at the flat shall put. The putters at the flat cavil at the com-

commencement of each week (or longer period, as the custom of the colliery may be) for the "going;" the first cavil being "first placed," the second, "second placed," &c.; the first placed putting from the hewer nearest and furthest off from the flat, the second from the next, and so on; and the last placed, in consequence, getting all his work from the "middle sheth," as the mid number between the nearest and the furthest places is called. The arrangement is made as follows: the craneman places the men's names in their order, commencing with the nearest, vertically upon the chalking deal, with the number of tubs each man is allowed to hew; the tubs are then added up, and divided by the number of putters, which gives the quantity each putter is to put, if hewed; half of this quantity is then taken by the craneman, and is made up from the nearest hewers, and the other half from the furthest, and this is the "first placed's" work. If any coals are left of the work of the nearest and furthest hewers, it forms the commencement of the quantity to be put by the "second placed;" and so on.

**PLATE NAILS.**—Used, in laying tramway, to nail the plates to the sleepers. They weigh about 22 to the pound, and are made with flat heads, round shafts, and are flattened at the points.

**POST.**—Sandstone.

**POUT, PUNCH.**—A tool used by the deputies in drawing timber out of a dangerous place. It has a shank about 8 feet long, with a spade handle, and a head, pointed and slightly curved towards the handle at one side, and like a hammer at the other. It is either used as a ram to knock the props down, or to draw them out after they have been knocked down.

**PRICKER.**—A rod of iron, about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in diameter at the thick end, at which it is turned round into a ring, and tapering to a point at the other. It is about 3 feet long. The point is inserted into the cartridge for blasting, and by it the cartridge is put



into its place in the drill-hole ; the pricker being allowed to remain in the hole until it is stemmed or tamped up with small coals, or stones, if the shot to be fired is in stone. The stemming should be damped. After being stemmed, the pricker is steadily drawn out by the ring ; thus leaving a port-hole to the gunpowder, by means of which, with a kitty and match, the powder is ignited. If the hole is in post, the pricker ought to be of copper ; frequent accidents having occurred by the ignition of the gunpowder from sparks occasioned by the attrition of the pricker against the stone.

PROP.—A piece of wood, cut  $2\frac{1}{2}$  or 3 inches shorter than the thickness of the seam of coal, and set upright beneath the end of a crowntree, or under a headtree, for the support of the roof. Props are best made of peeled larch, when this can be obtained. Where the wood is not less than 3 inches in diameter, they are worth, when of Scotch and larch fir mixed, about 4s. per 72 feet.

PROP-MAUL.—An iron maul, with a handle 3 feet long, used by the deputies in drawing props.

PULLEYS.—The wheels placed above a pit, over which the ropes for drawing coals are passed. They should be seldom less than 10 feet in diameter, and placed as low as can be conveniently done. Attention to these two points will be amply repaid in the saving of ropes.

PULLEY-FRAMES —The gearing above a pit, upon which the pulleys are supported.

PUNCH-PROP.—A short prop, set upon a crowntree or balk, where it does not support the middle of the roof, on account of the place having fallen before the timber was set. Also, a short prop, about 14 or 15 inches long, placed by a hewer under his sump or back-end, when he is under apprehension of its dropping down before he has got it kirved sufficiently far.

PUTTER.—See *Barrowman*.

**RAKE.**—A rake, with about 8 teeth, 2 inches apart, and 3 inches long, is used by the hewer in working coal by separation: the shaft may be 3 feet long.

**RAMBLE.**—A thin stratum of shale, often found lying immediately above the seam of coal. It falls down, and, getting mixed with the coals, causes some trouble to the hewer, in getting it separated and cast back. At some collieries, an extra allowance of 3d. or 4d. per score is made for hewing with ramble; and at others, the nature of the coal, with all its inconveniences, is taken into account, in the hewing price itself.

**RAPPER.**—A lever, placed at the top of a shaft or inclined plane, to one end of which a hammer is attached, and to the other a line, communicating with the bottom of the shaft or incline. Its use is to give signals, when every thing is ready at the bottom for drawing away.

**REGULATOR.**—A frame, containing a sort of door, one half of which slides open past the other half, like a transom window. It is placed in that division of air which has least distance to travel; the use of the slide being to regulate the quantity of air travelling in that direction. A row of holes should be made in the middle batten of the sliding part, and one in the middle stancheon of the frame, so that the regulator may be locked, by means of a screw bolt, in the proper position, to prevent its being ignorantly or wilfully altered.

**RENK, or RANK.**—A standard distance of 60 or 80 yards (called the first renk), upon which a standard price is paid for putting a score of coals. This, for 20 peck tubs and 80 yards, varies from 1s. to 1s. 3d. per score; an increased payment of 1d. per score being made for every addition of 20 yards to the first renk. The renk is measured by the overman in the middle of the fortnight; the average distance from the flat or station to each working place being taken,

and the score price for putting for that fortnight calculated thereon.

**RENT.**—Colliery rent consists of a fixed or certain rent, in consideration of which a certain quantity of coals is allowed to be annually worked and vended, but paid whether that quantity is worked or not ; and also of a surplus or tentale rent, payable for the coal worked above the certain quantity. It is usually covenanted that if the quantity worked and vended, in any year, shall fall short of that allowed in consideration of the certain rent, such “short workings,” as they are called, shall be allowed rent-free in future years, when the quantity worked shall exceed that allowed for the certain rent. Excess above the certain quantity is called “over-workings.” There are also—

*Outstroke rent*, for the privilege of breaking the barrier, and working and conveying underground the coal from an adjoining royalty.

*Shaft rent*, for the privilege of drawing up the shaft the coal worked from another royalty by outstroke.

*Wayleave rent*, for the privilege of conveying, at the surface, from the pit to the boundary, coal worked from another royalty by outstroke, and drawn up the pit.

*Damaged ground rent*, usually double rent for land occupied by engines, heapstead, shops, houses, railways, &c.

**RING.**—A crib laid in a pit to collect water, which would otherwise fall down the shaft. It may be made either of oak or metal, with a channel in its top side ; the side of the pit, for a foot or two up above the crib, being bevelled or cut away to the back part of the channel, so as to allow the water to drain into it. The water is then boxed away from the ring down the pit to the standage, or elsewhere if required.

**ROLL.**—See *Balk*.

**ROLLERS.**—Made usually of metal, and placed upon inclined planes, to support the rope and remove the

friction which would be occasioned by its rubbing upon the way.

ROLLEY.—A carriage used to carry tubs or corves along the horse-roads underground. The roley was contrived as an improvement upon the tram, upon which a single corf was placed; a horse drawing one, two, or three corves at a time. Upon the roley, which travelled upon larger wheels, and round topped rails instead of tram-plates, two, or, in some cases, three corves were placed, the horse drawing two or three rolleys. As further improvements took place, the rolleyways were constructed more perfectly; and, in some rare cases, as many as 7 rolleys, with 21 tubs of coals, each full tub weighing 12 cwt., have been the draught of a good pit horse. More lately, the rolleys have been less used; the tubs being mounted upon flanché, instead of tram wheels, and drawn by horses from the stations along the rolleyway, upon round-topped or bridge rails, to the shaft. Upon good road, a horse load is from 20 to 25 tubs.

A good pit horse can lead the following weight along a level rolleyway, in a good state, in 12 hours:

#### EMPTY LOAD.

9 rolleys, weighing $7\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. each, 27 journeys	<i>lbs.</i>
of 500 yards, equal to	- 204,120 led 500 yards.
18 empty tubs, weighing $2\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. each, 27	
journeys of 500 yards, equal to	- 136,080 „

#### FULL LOAD.

9 rolleys, as above	-	-	204,120	„
18 full tubs, weighing $9\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. each, distance				
as above	-	-	517,104	„

Total weight equal	-	1,061,424 led 500 yards.
--------------------	---	--------------------------

Or 25128·41 lbs. led 20 miles in 8 hours, equal  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour. And taking the friction at 1-130th part, or one half that of common tub-way (see *Barrowman*), the power of the horse, working 8 hours, is found to be equal to 193·29 lbs. drawn at the rate of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour. This is equivalent to 42523·8 lbs. raised 1 foot per minute.



“According to Desaguliers, a horse, drawing a weight out of a well over a pulley, can raise 200 lbs. for 8 hours together, at the rate of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles per hour.” (*Whewell, Treatise on Mechanics*, p. 306.) This is equal to 44,000 lbs. raised 1 foot high in a minute. The usual estimate of the power of a horse, as employed by engineers in their calculations, is 33,000 lbs. raised 1 foot high per minute.

ROLLEYWAY.—The horse road underground.

ROLLEYWAY-MAN.—A man whose business is to attend to the rolleyway, and keep it in order. It is also his duty to keep away the work, and see that no time is lost in getting the full waggons to the shaft, and the empty ones inbye again. His wages are about 2s. 9d. for 8 hours, or 3s. 4d. if he stands 12 hours.

ROOF STONE.—The stratum lying immediately above the coal.

ROPE.—Pit ropes, used for drawing coals, are generally made flat, consisting of four round ropes sewed together, side by side. Crab ropes, jack ropes, &c., are made round; the whole, of course, varied in strength, according to the work required of them. All ropes are best kept in store a year and a half, or two years, before being used.

A ready method of calculating the weight of a round rope, consists in squaring the circumference in inches, which gives the weight of 420 fathoms in hundredweights. Also, the weight in tons, which a round rope will safely bear, is equal to the 1-10th part of the square of the circumference in inches. Wire ropes are much used for inclined planes, and, as pit flat ropes, are becoming generally adopted.

ROPE-ROLL.—A cylinder, the centre of which is fixed to the main shaft of the winding machine, upon which the ropes used in drawing coals are wound: with flat ropes, it is divided into two compartments, each of little more width than the breadth of the rope. The diameter of a rope-roll should not be less than 8

feet, and may with advantage be made 10, or even 15 feet. One of the compartments is for the ascending, and one for the descending rope. By placing a roll upon a separate shaft, and working it on the second motion by means of a spur wheel upon each shaft, both ropes may be worked over the rolls and pulleys, instead of one rope only over the roll, and the other under it, as is generally practised; the rope which works under the roll and over the pulley, having two bends in contrary directions, always being worn out much sooner than the other.

**ROUND COALS.**—Best coals, from which the small has been separated by skreening.

**ROYALTY.**—The minerals, with the right of working them. They belong to the owner of a freehold, unless stated in the title deeds to the contrary. Beneath copyhold land, the royalty is vested in the lord of the manor.

**RUNNING BALK.**—A balk set in the direction of a drift, at its side, instead of across it, to form a support for the cross balks. A running balk at each side, with balks or planks supported by them, is the common method of timbering through an old board, or place where the roof has fallen so heavily as to make the entire ridding of the fall too expensive.

**SAGRE CLAY.**—Fire-clay; a soft argillaceous shale, usually the thill of a seam of coal.

**SAND.**—"The sand" is a stratum of soft sandstone, frequently met with in sinking through the lower new red sandstone, of which it is a member. When it contains water to any large amount, it wastes or falls away to a soft loose quicksand, and sometimes presents difficulties, in sinking through it, almost insurmountable.

**SCAMY POST.**—Soft, short, jointy freestone, in very thin layers, and much mixed with mica.

**SCARES.**—Thin layers of pyrites or spar, interstratified with coal seams.

**SCORE.**—A standard number of tubs or corves of coals at each colliery, upon which the hewers' and putters' prices for working are paid. It varies, in different localities, from 20 to 26 tubs. Thus, on the Tyne, the score consists of 20 ; on the Wear, 21 ; and on the Tees, from 20 to 26, at different collieries.

**SEAM.**—A bed of coal.

**SEG.**—To bend down, as a plank or balk does, at its middle, by superincumbent weight.

**SEPARATION.**—Filling up and receiving payment for the round coals only ; the small being separated and cast back in the mine.

**SET.**—To fill a tub unfairly, the large coals being built up and left intentionally hollow in the tub or corf, and carefully filled over the top ; the object being to get full payment for as small as possible a quantity of coals. This fraud can only be practised where the hewers are paid by measure ; in place of which, payment by weight is now most generally substituted.

Also, the spontaneous loosening of coal or stone, preparatory to its falling down.

**SET OUT.**—A tub or corf of coals filled insufficiently, and consequently forfeited.

**SETTERS.**—Large pieces of coal ; so called by the landsale cartmen, from their use in piling or setting round the sides of their carts, to enable them to hold a larger quantity of coals than could otherwise be placed upon them ; the small coals being put in the centre.

**SETTLE BOARDS.**—The portion of the heapstead at the top of the shaft, and between it and the skreens. It is covered with iron or metal sheets, for the easy passage of the tubs to and from the skreens.

**SHAFT.**—See *Pit*. Also, the handle of a pick, hack, shovel, or maul.

**SHEAVE.**—A wheel round which the rope of a self-acting inclined plane runs ; the motion on the incline

being regulated by a lever attached to a brake, which acts upon a crib placed upon the sheave for the purpose. Also, a grooved wheel, used in place of a roller, to support a rope.

SHETH DOOR.—See *Door*.

SHETH STOPPING.—See *Coursing*.

SHETHING.—See *Coursing*.

SHETHS.—The ribs of a chaldron waggon.

SHIFT.—The time worked by a man, or set of men, at coal or other underground work. A shift is 8 hours long; but in sinking, 4 hours. The payment for off-hand work, such as waste-work, timbering, ridding, &c., is 3s. per shift of 8 hours; for the sinker's shift of 4 hours, it is 2s. The sinker, however, generally returns, at the end of 8 hours, to another 4 hours' shift.

SHORTWORKINGS.—See *Rent*.

SHOT.—The cartridge or portion of gunpowder used in blasting. It is put into a paper cartridge, about 1 inch diameter, and from 4 to 9 or 10 inches long, according to the strength required. A pound of gunpowder will make five 6-inch shots.

SHOW.—The pale blue "top," or lambent flame, which appears above the ordinary flame of a candle, when it is burning in an atmosphere mixed with fire-damp. A mixture of carbonic acid with the fire-damp, occasions the colour of the "top" to be brown, and much longer and more distinct. When both the fire-damp and the air with which it is mixed are pure, the "top" is very faint; and caution and care are required in making the examination. It is by the show upon the candle that the presence of fire-damp is detected; although, where an accumulation is in the least suspected, the trial with the candle should not be attempted, but the examination made with a safety lamp.

SIDDLE.—The inclination of a seam of coal.

SIDE OVER.—To drive headways course across a pillar of coal, in working the broken.



**SIDE-WAVERS.**—The loose sides of a drift or open-cast, which would, if unsupported, soon fall.

**SIDING.**—Byeway.

**SINKER.**—See *Shift*.

**SKREEN.**—A frame 4 or 5 feet wide, and from 12 to 15 feet long, the upper side of which inclines from the settle boards to the top of the chaldron waggon. It is furnished with iron or metal bars, placed at the distance of from  $\frac{1}{4}$ th to  $\frac{3}{4}$ ths apart, upon which the coals are teemed, as they are drawn out of the pit. The coals which pass over the skreen are sent away as merchantable; and the small coal, which passes through between the bars, falls into the duff box, from whence it is taken to the apparatus.

**SKREENMEN.**—Men who pass the coals over the skreens into the waggons, and clean them from stones, slates, pyrites, &c. They should be paid in proportion to the quantity of impurity cleaned out from the coal. Their wages are about 2s. 6d. to 2s. 8d. per day of 12 hours.

**SLAG.**—See *Brat*.

**SLEEPER.**—Tram and rolleyway sleepers are pieces of wood, from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet long, about 6 inches broad, and 2 inches thick, for nailing tram-plates or bridge-rails to, or chairs for edge rolleyway rails. They are best made of larch.

**SLIDES.**—Upright rails, of wood or metal, fixed in a shaft, for the purpose of steadying the cages, which have corresponding grooves attached to them.

**SLIP.**—See *Hitch*.

**SLIVER.**—A thin lath, placed within two grooves, cut lengthways for the purpose, in the edges of two planks intended to be joined together, for the purpose of making the joint airtight.

**SMALL COALS.**—Coals that pass through the skreen bars, without further separation into nuts and duff.

**SMALL LEADER.**—A lad employed to put away small, to a stow-board, from the hewer working by separation in a narrow place.

**SOLE.**—The part of a chaldron waggon or coal-tub frame to which the bearances for the wheels are attached, and into which the sheths are inserted.

**SPARE.**—A piece of wood, 6 or 8 inches long, 6 inches broad, cut from 1 inch Scotch deal, with one of the flat sides tapered off to the end; used in driving behind cribs or tubbing, in the same manner as a baff-end; or, more properly speaking, the baff-end is put in first, behind the crib, and next to the pit wall, and the spare driven between the baff-end and the crib, in the manner of a wedge.

**SPEARS.**—The rod of a pump. Spears are made of Memel or Norway fir, in lengths of about 40 feet, and joined together by spear-plates, which are flat plates of iron, say, 11 feet long,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches broad, 1 to  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick in the middle, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch at the ends. The size will vary with the weight of the lift. There are two plates to each joint, bolted together through the spears. Wet spears are those which, working within a column of pumps, are constantly immersed in water: dry spears are those which pass by a column, or down a staple, to the columns beneath the uppermost one.

**SPIGOT AND FAUCIT.**—A description of pump joint, in which each pump is cast with a cup or faucit end; the other, or spigot end, being plain, for the purpose of insertion into the cup; the joint being made tight, by wedging between the inside of the cup and the spigot. It makes an excellent joint, but requires more putting together than a flanch joint, and is also much more difficult to break, should it be necessary to do so.

**SPLINT.**—Coarse grey-looking coal. It burns to white ashes. Suitable for burning lime, and the better sorts for steam purposes.

**STAITHS.**—"1709. From the state of the trade, it was necessary to hold, from time to time, large stocks of coals, in order to give dispatch, to suit tides and meet other emergencies. Hence those extensive

erections called staiths, many of which remain to the present day." (*Dunn, View of the Coal Trade.*)

The term staith is now applied to the whole of the erections constructed for the shipment of coals, whether they be capable of being used as coal depots or not. The general principle upon which they are now constructed, consists in a frame, upon which the full waggon of coals rests, being carried down to the deck of the vessel by the weight of the waggon, and its motion retarded by a balance weight, which is sufficient, after the coals have been discharged from the waggon, to raise it up again to the level of the railway from which it descended.

STAMP.—A hole made with a pick in the coal, in which to place a wedge.

STANDAGE.—A portion of workings excavated on the dip side of a pit, as a reservoir for the mine water during a suspension of the pumping engine from work. A drift, called an underlevel drift, is driven perfectly level in the stone beneath the seam, between the lowest point of the standage and the sump at the pit bottom; and a dam is placed in it, containing a plug hole, which is closed when the engine is stopped, and opened when pumping is resumed. A good standage is of the utmost importance to the well-being of a colliery.

STAPLE.—A small pit, sunk upwards or downwards from one seam to another underground, or for the purpose of proving a slip dyke. A counterbalance staple is a small pit, sunk from the surface, for a balance weight to work in, in order to assist the winding machine, by equalizing the weight of the ascending and descending ropes. The arrangement is as follows: the rope to which the balance weight is attached is of such a length, that, as the ascending and descending cages approach each other, the balance weight, which consists of a very heavy chain, shall gradually, by resting on the bottom of the staple, relieve the winding engine of its weight, so that at meetings, when the ropes themselves balance each

other, no influence shall be exerted by the balance weight. After meetings, the descending rope becomes heaviest, and the engine again winds up the balance weight, to counteract its downward impulse, in the same manner as, by formerly unwinding it, the ascending rope was assisted. Since the introduction of flat ropes, the winding engines, in a great measure, possess a balancing power within themselves, by the ascending rope gradually increasing its roll, and the descending one diminishing it. A jackhead staple is sometimes sunk for the jackhead, or high set of pumps, to work in.

START.—See *Gin*.

STEEL MILL.—A contrivance used, before the invention of the Davy lamp, to give light in foul places. "It is an instrument for striking light with flint and steel. A brass wheel, about 5 inches diameter, with 52 teeth, works a pinion with 11 teeth: on the axle of the latter is fixed a thin steel wheel, from 5 to 6 inches in diameter. The wheels are placed in a light frame of iron, which is suspended by a leather belt round the neck of the person who *plays* the mill. Great velocity is given to the steel wheel by turning the handle of the toothed wheel; and the sharp edge of a flint is applied to the circumference of the steel wheel, which immediately elicits an abundance of sparks, and emits considerable light." (*Buddle*,) The greatest confidence in its safety at one time existed; but it was proved to have been misplaced, for to it several explosions of gas were eventually traced.

STEM.—To tamp or fill up a drill hole, in which the powder has been placed, with small coals or stones, previous to blasting.

STEMMING.—Small coals or stones, with which a hole is tamped.

STENTING.—An opening between a pair of headways or drifts, through which the air circulates until another is holed further inbye. Stentings should be holed no more frequently than is rendered necessary



by the quantity of gas evolved in driving the drifts ; because, as they require, on the holing of every new one, that the last shall be permanently closed by a stopping of brick or stone, the too frequent holing of stentings, by increasing the number of stoppings, not only adds to expense, but increases the liability to loss of air, which, at the best stoppings, often escapes.

STICK.—To cease work, in order to obtain an increase, or prevent a reduction of wages, &c.

STOCK.—Colliery stock comprises the establishment of engines, waggons, horses, and materials of every description requisite to carry on a colliery. It is divided into *fixed* and *moveable* stock. The former includes every thing required to keep the colliery in a working state, such as engines, waggons, railway, tubs, tramway, skreens, &c., and a proper working quantity of materials, viz., hay, corn, timber, iron, oil, nails, &c., &c. The moveable stock consists of what can be sold off the premises without prejudice to the working of the colliery being fully carried on : it can only comprise, therefore, old pumps, unnecessary engines, and useless materials of every description. It is generally understood that horses, hay and corn, and all materials in store, are comprehended in the term moveable (or, as it is often called, “live”) stock ; but this is evidently an erroneous impression.

STOOK.—A small block or pillar of coal, left to support the headways course, in taking off a jud or lift in pillar working.

STOPPING.—A wall built in any excavation, for the purpose of conducting air further into the mine. Stoppings are built of brick or stone where required to be permanent, the windward side of the stopping being covered with a coating of lime. The best and cheapest stoppings are built of the stone which falls from the roof, when its nature is not too soft. They should not be less than 4 feet thick. When built of brick, a brick in length will be found ample. Stone are superior to brick stoppings, in affording a better

support to the roof. Stoppings which are not required to be permanent, are put up with common brattice, and plastered if necessary.

**STOW.**—To put stones and rubbish from falls, stone drifts, or from where it is taken up or taken down, into places appointed for the purpose.

**STOW-BOARD.**—A board driven for convenience of stowage.

**STRIKE.**—Wood-full. In former agreements between coal owners and workmen, it was stipulated that the specified coal tubs should be filled "strike or wood-full."

Also, strike, a more general cessation from labour than implied by stick.

**STRUM.**—A cover, containing small holes, placed upon the end of a water-pipe at which the water enters, to prevent stones or other rubbish passing into the pipe, whereby the passage of the water might be obstructed.

**STYTHER.**—Carbonic acid gas, often found in old workings, and evolved instead of fire-damp in most shallow mines.

**SULPHUR.**—A common expression among old miners for fire-damp.

**SUMP.**—See *Back-end*. Also, in driving a stone drift, or in sinking a pit, that portion kept a yard or more in advance of the drift or pit, to enable the gunpowder to act to greater advantage upon the parts left. The origin of the term has been in its application to the advanced part of a sinking pit, where the water accumulates, and where the bottom of the sinking set of pumps is placed.

Also, that portion of a pit, beneath the seam of coal, where the water of the mine gathers previous to being pumped to the surface. Also, a small reservoir, cut by the side of a dip and wet place, into which the water from the face of the place is conveyed, by means of levels or by bowling, and after-

wards led or pumped, by a hand or horse pump, to some point whence it will flow to the shaft.

**SWEEP-PLATES.**—Curved plates for laying barrow-way round a turn.

**SWELLY, or SWALLY.**—A gradual depression or dish in the strata.

**SWING-DOOR.**—See *Door*.

**TACK.**—A small prop of coal, sometimes left in kirving a jud, to support it until the kirving is finished, except knocking out the tack. A punch-prop is sometimes used for the same purpose.

**TEN.**—The measure of coals upon which the landlord's rent is paid. It usually consists of 440 bolls of 8 pecks, but varies much under different landlords, generally, however, within the range of from 418 to 440 bolls.


**THILL.**—The floor of a seam of coal.

**TOOM.**—Empty.

**TOP.**—See *Show*.

**TRAIL JUD.**—In driving a wide board, to drive 3 or 4 yards in narrow, and then take off a jud sideways, to make the board the proper breadth.

**TRAM.**—A wooden carriage, upon which the corves are conveyed along a tramway. Since the substitution of tubs, the trams have been attached to them.

**TRAMPLATE.**—An iron or metal rail, of the section , and weighing about 4 lbs. to the foot, with which the way for the passage of carriages, moving on tram or edged wheels, is laid.

**TRAP-DOOR.**—See *Door*.

**TRAPPER.**—A little boy whose employment consists in opening and shutting a trap-door when required. His wages are 9d. or 10d. per day of 12 hours.

**TUB.**—An open-topped box of wood or iron, attached to a tram, and used in conveying coals from the working places to the surface.

**TUBBING.**—A casing put into a pit, to keep back water. It was formerly put in with planks, properly

48

dressed at the joints to the sweep of the pit, and kept in their places by being spiked to cribs behind them. Tubbing was also constructed of cribs of oak, built one upon the other the required height, and afterwards wedged: this formed an excellent, but expensive tub. At present, tubbing is put in in metal segments. The commencement is made by laying a metal or wood wedging crib at the first good foundation below the feeder of water to be tubbed back, and then setting on the segments, backing the tubbing firmly with soil all the way up, so far as it is required to be put in. Half-inch sheathing, of American fir, should be put in, at both ends and bottom of each segment, and baffle-ends and spares be driven in behind, so as to set the tubbing true to the centre of the pit. The segments are usually from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 feet high, and from 3 to 4 feet long, according to the size of the pit, so that a certain number of segments may form the pit. When the tubbing is all built up, the joints are wedged with Memel wedges, as long as they can be driven in at the joints; the whole being gone twice or thrice over.

**URNS.**—Curved plates, made of cast metal, used at a branch-off tramway in the workings.

**UNDERLEVEL DRIFT.**—See *Standage*.

**VIEWER.**—The manager of a colliery; one who has the charge of all underground, and generally of all surface arrangements.

**WAILERS.**—Boys employed in the waggons, to pick out any stones or pyrites which have escaped the observation of the skreenmen.

**WASTE.**—The old workings and airways.

**WASTEMEN.**—Generally old men, who are employed in building pillars for the support of the roof in the waste, and in keeping the airways open and in good order. Their wages are about 2s. 4d. per day. A master wasteman (under the viewer) has the charge of the waste, and should be a steady and careful man,



and have some skill in ventilation. His wages are about 21s. per week.

WAY.—A working district underground.

WAYLEAVE RENT.—See *Rent*.

WHIM.—An old expression for a gin. The first winding engines were called whim engines.

WIMBLE.—See *Bore*.

WINDBORE.—The bottom pump in a set. It is cast with holes, called snoreholes, in a sinking set; a sufficient number at the bottom being left open for waterway for the engine.

WIREDRAWN.—An engine is wiredrawn when there are not a sufficient number of holes in the windbore left open for waterway.

WORKING.—The crackling of the roof stone previous to falling.

WORKING BARREL.—The portion of a pump in which the bucket works. An easy rule for calculating the quantity of water drawn at a single stroke, in a working barrel of a given diameter, is as follows: Square the diameter in inches, and divide by 10, for the gallons in a three feet stroke.



**Boston Public Library**  
**Central Library, Copley Square**

**Division of**  
**Reference and Research Services**

The Date Due Card in the pocket indicates the date on or before which this book should be returned to the Library.

Please do not remove cards from this pocket.

BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 9999 08723 409 0



